

IBM System Storage Open Systems Tape Encryption Solutions

Understanding tape encryption and Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 2

Planning for and installing hardware and software

Configuring and managing the tape encryption solution

Alex Osuna Luciano Cecchetti Edgar Vinson

Redbooks

ibm.com/redbooks



International Technical Support Organization

IBM System Storage Open Systems Tape Encryption Solutions

December 2010

Note: Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Notices" on page vii.

First Edition (December 2010)

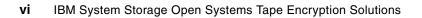
This edition applies to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) Version 2.

Contents

Notices	. vii
Trademarks	viii
Preface	. ix
The team who wrote this book	
Become a published author	. xi
Comments welcome	. xi
Stay connected to IBM Redbooks	. xii
Chapter 1. Introduction to tape encryption	. 1
1.1 IBM System Storage tape drives.	
1.2 How tape data encryption works	
1.3 What to encrypt	
1.4 Why use tape data encryption.	
1.4.1 Why encrypt data in the drive	
1.4.2 Fundamental to encryption: Policy and key management	
1.4.3 Summary	
1.5 Concepts of tape data encryption	. 8
1.5.1 Symmetric key encryption	
1.5.2 Asymmetric key encryption	11
1.5.3 Hybrid encryption	14
1.5.4 Digital certificates	15
1.6 Simplifying key management with TKLM	20
1.6.1 Encryption as a critical business process	
1.6.2 Encryption and key management for compliance, availability, retention and secu 21	ırity
1.6.3 Securing data automatically on self-encrypting drives	
1.6.4 Addressing objections to encryption of data at rest	21
Chapter 2. IBM tape encryption methods	23
2.1 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	24
2.1.1 What is new in version 2	24
2.1.2 Tivoli Lifecycle Key Manager components and resources	
2.1.3 Key exchange	
2.2 Methods of managing IBM tape encryption	
2.2.1 System-managed encryption	
2.2.2 Library-managed encryption	
2.2.3 Encrypting and decrypting with SME and LME	
2.2.4 Application-managed encryption	
2.2.5 Mixed mode example	37
Chapter 3. IBM System Storage tape and tape automation for encryption	
3.1 IBM System Storage TS1130 and TS1120 Tape Drive	
3.1.1 Tape data encryption support	
3.1.2 IBM TotalStorage 3592 Model J70 Tape Controller	
3.2 IBM LTO Ultrium tape drives and libraries	
3.2.1 LTO overview	
3.2.2 LTO media	
3.2.3 IBM System Storage TS2240 Tape Drive Express Model	46

3.2.4 IBM System Storage TS2250 Tape Drive Express model	. 47
3.2.5 IBM System Storage TS2350 Tape Drive	. 48
3.2.6 IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader	. 48
3.2.7 IBM System Storage TS3100 Tape Library	
3.2.8 IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library	
3.2.9 IBM System Storage TS3310 Tape Library	
3.3 IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library	
3.4 IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library	
3.4.1 Tape encryption overview	
3.4.2 Tape drives, libraries, and media relationship.	
Chapter 4. Planning for software and hardware	. 65
4.1 Encryption planning.	
4.2 Planning assumptions	. 66
4.3 Encryption planning quick-reference	
4.4 Choosing encryption methods.	
4.4.1 Encryption method comparison.	
4.4.2 Open systems encryption methods	
4.4.3 Decision time	
4.5 Solutions available by operating system	
4.5.1 AIX solution components	
4.5.2 Linux on System p, System x, and other Intel or AMD Opteron servers	
4.5.3 HP-UX, Sun, and Windows components	
4.5.4 IBM Tivoli Storage Manager	
4.6 Ordering information	
4.6.1 TS1120 tape drive prerequisites	
4.6.2 Tape controller prerequisites.	
4.6.3 LTO4 or LTO5 tape drive prerequisites.	
4.6.4 Tape library prerequisites	
4.6.5 Other library and rack open systems installations.	
4.6.6 General software prerequisites for encryption	
4.6.7 TS1120 and TS1130 supported platforms	
4.6.8 IBM LTO4 and LTO5 tape drive supported platforms	
4.7 Other planning considerations for tape data encryption	
4.7.1 Performance considerations	
4.7.2 Encryption with other backup applications	
4.7.3 ALMS and encryption in the TS3500 library	
4.7.4 TS1120 and TS1130 rekeying considerations	. 89
Chapter 5. Planning for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V2	91
5.1 Planning the TKLM v2 installation.	
5.1.1 Hardware requirements for open systems	
5.1.2 Software requirements	
5.1.3 Keystore type and key size requirements	
5.2 Before you migrate	
5.2.1 Migration requirements for Encryption Key Manager	
5.2.2 Migration restrictions for Encryption Key Manager	
5.2.3 Migration methods	
5.3 Suggested best practices	
0.0 Ouggesieu vesi plaulues	102
Chapter 6. TKLM Windows installation	105
6.1 TKLM Windows installation	
Chapter 7. TKLM Linux installation	123

7.1 TKLM Linux installation	. 124
Chapter 8. TKLM operational considerations	. 147
8.1 Scripting with TKLM	. 148
8.1.1 Simple Linux backup script example	. 148
8.2 Synchronizing primary TKLM configuration data	
8.2.1 Setting up primary and secondary TKLM servers	
8.3 TKLM backup and restore procedures	
8.3.1 Backup using the GUI	
8.3.2 Restore using the GUI	
8.3.3 Backup using the command line	
8.3.4 Restore using the command line.	
8.4 Data sharing with business partners.	
8.4.1 Sharing TS1100 certificate data with a business partner	
8.4.2 Sharing LTO key data with a business partner	
8.5 Fixing the security warnings in your web browser	
8.5.1 Fixing the security warning in Internet Explorer browser	. 160
Chapter 9. Administration	
9.1 Role Based Access Control (RBAC)	
9.1.1 Permissions	
9.1.2 Installation defaults	. 162
9.1.3 Adding new TKLM users	. 162
9.1.4 Assigning roles to new users	. 166
9.1.5 RBAC impacts to the CLI and GUI	. 168
9.2 Device groups	
9.2.1 Creating a new device group	
9.2.2 Adding a tape drive to a device group	
9.2.3 Deleting a tape drive from a device group	
9.2.4 Deleting a device group	
9.2.5 Creating a corresponding role for a new device group	
9.2.6 Moving a tape drive to a different device group	
9.2.7 Tips for working with device groups	
9.3 LTO key groups.	
9.3.1 Creating an LTO key group.	
9.3.2 Modifying an LTO key group	
9.3.3 Deleting an LTO key group	
9.4 3592 Certificates	
9.4.1 Creating a 3592 certificate	
9.4.2 Modifying a 3592 certificate	
9.4.3 Deleting a 3592 certificate	. 195
9.5 Scheduling rollovers	. 197
9.5.1 Scheduling LTO key group rollover.	. 198
9.5.2 Scheduling 3592 certificate rollover	
Related publications	. 203
IBM Redbooks	. 203
Other publications	. 204
Online resources	
How to get Redbooks	
Help from IBM	
······	/
Index	. 209



Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both. These and other IBM trademarked terms are marked on their first occurrence in this information with the appropriate symbol (® or ™), indicating US registered or common law trademarks owned by IBM at the time this information was published. Such trademarks may also be registered or common law trademarks in other countries. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

AIX 5L™	POWER7™
AIX®	pSeries®
AS/400®	RACF®
DB2®	Redbooks®
DS8000®	Redbooks (logo) 🧬 🛛
ESCON®	RS/6000®
FICON®	System i5®
i5/OS®	System i®
IBM®	System p®
iSeries®	System Storage®
Netfinity®	System x®

System z9® System z® Tivoli® TotalStorage® WebSphere® xSeries® z/OS® z/VM® z/VSE™ z9®

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Java, and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Intel, Intel logo, Intel Inside logo, and Intel Centrino logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Preface

This IBM® Redbooks® publication discusses IBM System Storage® Open Systems Tape Encryption solutions. It specifically describes Tivoli® Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) Version 2, which is a Java[™] software program that manages keys enterprise-wide and provides encryption-enabled tape drives with keys for encryption and decryption. The book explains various methods of managing IBM tape encryption. These methods differ in where the encryption policies reside, where key management is performed, whether a key manager is required, and if required, how the tape drives communicate with it.

Essentially, the security and accessibility characteristics of encrypted data create considerations for clients which do not exist with storage devices that do not encrypt data. Encryption key material must be kept secure from disclosure or use by any agent that does not have authority to it; at the same time it must be accessible to any agent that has both the authority and need to use it at the time of need.

IBM supports three methods of encrypting data on tape:

- System-Managed Encryption (SME)
- Library-Managed Encryption (LME)
- Application-Managed Encryption (AME)

Only SME and LME require the implementation of an external component, the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager, to provide and manage keys. With AME, key provisioning and key management are handled by the application. The following tape drives are capable of encrypting the data that is written on the tape cartridge with TKLM Version 2:

- ► IBM System Storage TS1130 Model E06 and Model EU6 Tape Drive
- IBM System Storage TS1120 Model E05 Tape Drive
- IBM System Storage Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium Generation 4 and 5 Tape Drive.

Because of the nature of encryption, the security of and accessibility to encrypted data depends on the security of and accessibility to the key needed to decrypt the data. The disclosure of a decryption key to an unauthorized agent (a person or a system component) creates a security exposure if that agent also has access to the ciphertext generated with the associated encryption key. If all copies of the decryption key are lost (whether intentionally or accidentally), then there is no feasible way to decrypt the associated ciphertext, and the data contained in the ciphertext is said to have been *cryptographically erased*. If the only copies of some data that exist are cryptographically-erased ciphertext, then

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2010. All rights reserved.

access to that data has been permanently lost for all practical purposes. This book is written for readers who need to understand and use the various methods of managing IBM tape encryption.

The team who wrote this book

This book was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization, San Jose Center.



Alex Osuna is a Project Leader at the International Technical Support Organization, Tucson Center. He writes extensively about IBM System Storage N series and Tape. Before joining the ITSO five years ago, he worked in the Tivoli Western Region as a Systems Engineer. Alex has worked in the IT industry for more than 32 years, focusing mainly on storage. He joined IBM 29 years ago, and holds certifications from IBM, Red Hat,

Microsoft® and the Open Group.



Luciano Cecchetti is an IBM Senior Accredited Product Service Representative who has more than 31 years of experience in hardware support activities. Since 1985, he has provided technical support in Rome, Italy. He provided second level support for ES/9000 during an international assignment in 1988 at the IBM European Product Support Group in Montpelier, France. As a specialist member of the RMSS SWAT

Team, he supported and coordinated the first 3494 VTS/Library installations in Portugal and Greece. In 2002, he earned a Specialist (CS) degree in High End Tape Solutions from the IBM Professional Certification Program. He has held a nomination for Senior membership of World-Wide Product Services Profession since 2007. He joined the RMSS Mainz VET/PFE (Virtual EMEA Team) in 2010, working as Back Office Specialist for EMEA Tape Support. Luciano's areas of expertise include CPUs, disks, and tapes in complex open system and mainframe environments.



Edgar Vinson is a Senior Mainframe Technical Solution Architect in the United States who has 32 years of experience in the mainframe field. Prior to becoming an architect, he was a mainframe systems programmer for more than 27 years. His areas of expertise include mainframe DASD and tape for configurations, consulting, and creating education for Solution Architect teams. Edgar has worked for IBM for 11 years.

Previously, he was in the US Air Force for seven years and worked for Boeing for 14 years.

x IBM System Storage Open Systems Tape Encryption Solutions

Thanks to the following people for their contributions to this project:

Carla J. Ruhl IBM Systems & Technology Group, Systems Hardware Development San Jose

Jeff Ziehm IBM LTO/3592, Tape Performance - ATS Americas

James Ebert Information Developer: ID Technical Writing

Matthew Boult Tivoli Product Introduction Specialist - BetaWorks

Become a published author

Here's an opportunity to spotlight your skills, grow your career, and become a published author - all at the same time! Join an ITSO residency project and help write a book in your area of expertise, while honing your experience using leading-edge technologies. Your efforts will help to increase product acceptance and customer satisfaction, as you expand your network of technical contacts and relationships. Residencies run from two to six weeks in length, and you can participate either in person or as a remote resident working from your home base.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at:

ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html

Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our books to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this book or other IBM Redbooks publications in one of the following ways:

Use the online Contact us review Redbooks form found at:

ibm.com/redbooks

 Send your comments in an e-mail to: redbooks@us.ibm.com

Preface xi

Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization Dept. HYTD Mail Station P099 2455 South Road Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400

Stay connected to IBM Redbooks

► Find us on Facebook:

http://www.facebook.com/IBMRedbooks

► Follow us on Twitter:

http://twitter.com/ibmredbooks

Look for us on LinkedIn:

http://www.linkedin.com/groups?home=&gid=2130806

Explore new Redbooks publications, residencies, and workshops with the IBM Redbooks weekly newsletter:

https://www.redbooks.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/subscribe?OpenForm

► Stay current on recent Redbooks publications with RSS Feeds:

http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/rss.html

xii IBM System Storage Open Systems Tape Encryption Solutions

1

Introduction to tape encryption

This chapter presents an overview of the concepts involved in encrypting data on tape. It introduces the members of the IBM System Storage tape drive family that incorporate this capability and explains how tape data encryption works. Encryption keys and key management issues are covered, as are digital signatures and digital certificates. Finally, the advantages of the IBM tape encryption solution and IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager are explored.

1.1 IBM System Storage tape drives

IBM has three tape drives that are capable of encrypting the data that is written on the tape cartridge:

- ► IBM System Storage TS1130 Model E06 and Model EU6 Tape Drive
- IBM System Storage TS1120 Model E05 Tape Drive
- ► IBM System Storage Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium Generation 4 and 5 Tape Drive

In this document, we use abbreviations to refer to the drives, designating them TS1130 Tape Drive, TS1120 Tape Drive, and LTO4 and LTO5 Tape Drive.

The *IBM System Storage TS1130 Tape Drive Model E06 and Model EU6* have the capability to encrypt data on tape cartridges. This encryption capability is standard on all TS1130 Tape Drives. The encryption capability includes drive hardware, and microcode additions and changes.

The *IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drive Model E05* shown in Figure 1-1 has the capability to encrypt data on tape cartridges. The TS1120 Tape Drive Model E05 has been enhanced to support data encryption. Beginning with shipments on 8 September 2006, this encryption capability is standard on all TS1120 Model E05 Tape Drives; it is available as a chargeable upgrade feature for existing installed TS1120 Model E05 Tape Drives shipped prior to 8 September 2006. The encryption capability includes drive hardware, and licensed internal code additions and changes. A TS1120 can be upgraded to a TS1130 model EU6.



Figure 1-1 IBM System Storage TS1120 Model E05 Tape Drive

The *IBM System Storage LTO Ultrium Generation 4 Tape Drive* shown in Figure 1-2 has the capability to encrypt data on tape cartridges. The LTO4 Tape Drive was originally designed to support data encryption, and therefore, all LTO4 Tape Drives come standard with the data encryption capability. The encryption capability includes drive hardware, and licensed internal code additions and changes.

Although the LTO4 drive can read LTO2 and LTO3 cartridges and can write to LTO3 cartridges, LTO Ultrium Generation 4 cartridges are required to support encryption.



Figure 1-2 IBM System Storage LTO Ultrium Generation 4 Tape Drive

Although other encryption solutions require hardware resources or processor power when using software encryption, tape data encryption is done with little or no impact on the performance of the TS1130 Tape Drive, TS1120 Tape Drive, or LTO4 Tape Drive. You can easily exchange encrypted tapes with your business partners or data centers that have the necessary key information to decrypt the data.

The *IBM System Storage LTO Ultrium Generation 5 Tape Drive* shown in Figure 1-3 is part of the entry level IBM System Storage tape product family. It supports data storage expansion by leveraging the newest generation of Linear Tape-Open (LTO) technology to help cost-effectively handle growing storage requirements.

The TS2350 Tape Drive is well suited for handling backup, save and restore, and archival data storage needs with higher capacity and higher data transfer rates than the previous generation of drives. In addition, the IBM Ultrium 5 technology is designed to support media partitioning and the new IBM Long Term File System technology; it continues to support WORM media.



Figure 1-3 TS2350 Tape Drive_LTO5

The IBM Ultrium 5 technology continues to support encryption of data. The hardware encryption and decryption core and control core reside in the IBM Ultrium 5 tape drive. A large internal data buffer helps improve data access rates and reduce cartridge fill and rewind times and dynamic channel calibration helps to increase data throughput. In addition to reading and writing to LTO Ultrium 5 tape cartridges, the TS2350 can read and write to LTO Ultrium 4 cartridges and read LTO Ultrium 3 cartridges.

With the original encryption announcement for the TS1120 Tape Drive, IBM also introduced an IBM Encryption Key Manager (EKM) component for the Java platform feature to generate

and communicate encryption keys for tape drives across the enterprise. The feature uses standard key repositories on supported platforms. The IBM tape data encryption solution provides an enterprise key management solution with common software for Open Systems and mainframe environments that allows sharing of a common keystore across platforms. Integration with z/OS® policy, key management, and security capabilities provides a proven, highly secure infrastructure for encryption key management.

The IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) is the next generation of key manager software to enable serving keys to the encrypting tape drives. TKLM gives a consistent look and feel to key management tasks across the brand, while also simplifying those tasks.

IBM tape data encryption provides high performance because it is performed at the tape drive hardware at the native speeds of the drive. It also supports encryption of large amounts of tape data for backup and archive purposes.

An IBM tape data encryption solution utilizing theTS1130 Tape Drive, TS1120 Tape Drive, or LTO4 and 5 Tape Drive offers a cost-effective solution for tape data encryption by offloading encryption tasks from the servers, leveraging existing tape infrastructure incorporated in standard IBM Tape Libraries, and eliminating the need for unique appliance hardware.

You can greatly simplify your tape data encryption management because the solution provides functions that are transparent to your applications when encryption is managed by the operating system (system-managed encryption) or when encryption is managed by the tape library (library-managed encryption). For TS1130 and TS1120 encryption, the cartridge data key is stored in an encrypted form on the tape cartridge. For LTO4 and 5 encryption, a pointer to the data key that is used to encrypt the tape is stored on the tape cartridge. Support for a single key management approach can help reduce audit and compliance costs.

When taking a closer look at encryption, several of the most important questions to consider are:

- How does tape data encryption work?
- What should you encrypt, and what should you not encrypt?
- Why use tape data encryption? What are the benefits for your organization?

1.2 How tape data encryption works

Encryption, implemented in the tape drive, encrypts the data before it is written to the cartridge. When tape compression is enabled, the tape drive first compresses the data to be written and then encrypts it. This method means no loss of capacity with IBM tape data encryption. If the encryption solution encrypts the data first and then tries to compress the data, the encrypted data usually compresses very little, if at all.

To encrypt the data, the tape drive requires the use of a key. This key is provided by the Encryption Key Manager in an encrypted form to make the tape data encryption solution secure.

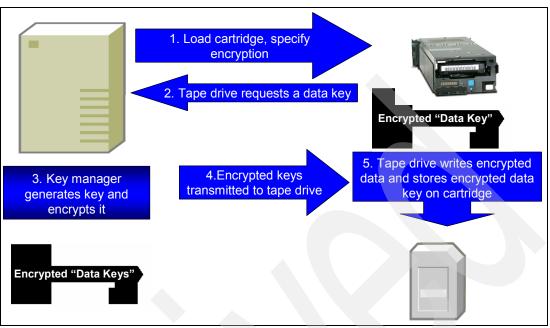


Figure 1-4 summarizes the process of tape data encryption using the TS1130 or TS1120.

Figure 1-4 TS1120 and TS1130 tape data encryption process flow

Figure 1-5 summarizes the LTO4 and 5 tape data encryption process flow.

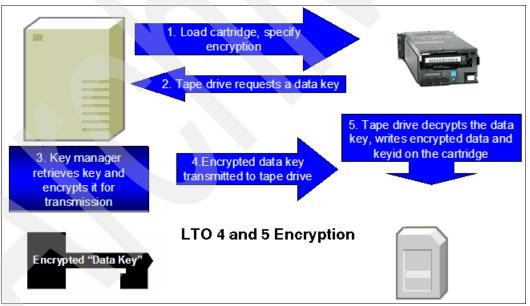


Figure 1-5 LTO4 and 5 tape data encryption process

For a detailed description of these processes, refer to Chapter 2, "IBM tape encryption methods" on page 23.

1.3 What to encrypt

Since 2005, over 250 million consumers have been notified of potential security breaches regarding personal information. The source for this information is:

http://www.Privacyrights.org

The loss of computer backup tapes is one type of event that triggers consumer notification. This has led to increasing data protection requirements.

What should you encrypt, and just as important, what should you not encrypt?

The focus on data security continues to increase, as evidenced by the following: California is generally considered the first state to have implemented a law requiring disclosure of security breaches. This occurred in July, 2003. Since then, legislation has been enacted by 38 states requiring notification in cases of security breaches.¹ Similar federal legislation has also been proposed.²

Data protection requirements are driven by a variety of factors. In addition to regulatory requirements that demand greater data security, integrity, retention, auditability, and privacy, the reasons for attempting to increase data protection include:

- Loss or theft of data can result in severe business impacts, including financial liability, reputation damage, legal risk, and compliance risk.
- The need to share data securely with business partners and maintain backups at remote locations.
- The desire to reduce complexity and improve processes around enterprise encryption management.
- ► The need to cost-effectively encrypt large quantities of tape data.

In the financial services sector there is even more motivation to perform flawless data encryption, including:

► A riskier environment.

Internet Banking, for example, relies on open networks with multiple access points to conduct business in real time to drive down costs and improve response times to revenue generating opportunities.

- Growing regulatory burden, such as:
 - Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (GLBA) of 1999
 - California Law No. SB 1386
 - FCRA/FACTA amendments
 - Basel II

Not all of the regulations specifically require the encryption of stored data. However, many organizations are implementing encryption for their protected information in conjunction with other security layers to protect Personally-Identifiable Information.

 Maturing industry standards, such as the Payment Card Industry (PCI) Data Security Standard (DSS).

In summary, simply encrypt everything that you can encrypt while still maintaining the ability to recover data in the event of a disaster. As long as system data can be separated from application data, encrypting everything with no performance impact is easier than choosing

¹ http://www.Privacyrights.org

² http://www.epic.org/privacy/bill_track.html

which data falls into which legislation for encryption, and trying to keep current on the dynamic privacy rights rules and regulations.

1.4 Why use tape data encryption

Tape data encryption is used to hide and protect sensitive data. If tape cartridges leave data centers, the data is no longer protected through Resource Access Control Facility (RACF®) or similar access protection mechanisms. Tape data encryption is an easy and economical way to protect data from unauthorized view, thereby fulfilling a large and increasing number of public and private security requirements.

Important and sensitive data can be protected in many ways. Data can be encrypted by means of special software programs or hardware adapters, or outside of the device where the data is stored. Encrypting data with software programs takes away processor power, and encrypting data with hardware requires additional investment in hardware for the computers.

One advantage of IBM tape data encryption is that the data is encrypted after compression, and there are no additional software program costs. IBM tape data encryption saves space on tape cartridges and avoids additional hardware investments. In addition, outboard encryption in the tape drives can help you protect large volumes of tape data in a cost-effective way. Data on cartridges does not have to be *degaussed* or overwritten with patterns of x°FF' at the end of life of the cartridge. This approach is valid for Write Once Read Many (WORM) cartridges and for normal cartridges.

The encryption key management capability is designed to manage keys across mainframes and Open Systems environments. There is only one component to be managed across multiple platforms.

1.4.1 Why encrypt data in the drive

The IBM tape drive encryption solution encrypts data *within* the drive using the 256-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithm, rather than receiving previously encrypted data. This system offers several advantages. Encrypting data in the drive produces the most efficient data compression, because the drive first compresses the data, then encrypts it, providing more efficient data storage and media usage.

Encrypting in the drive also eliminates having to use additional machines or appliances in the environment by offloading the encryption processing overhead onto the drive. Because the drive can also process unencrypted workloads, the IT environment is further simplified by eliminating the need for separate drives to process data that does not have to be encrypted.

1.4.2 Fundamental to encryption: Policy and key management

Tape-drive-based encryption using keys is only part of the solution. A complete solution must also address encryption policy and key management. Because policy and key management can vary depending on the environment, IBM has developed a flexible solution that allows you to tailor the implementation to your unique environment.

The IBM solution provides policy options at three levels:

- Library layer
- Application layer
- System layer

IBM supports two methods for managing the encryption keys: through the application (in Open Systems) or through a new key manager program called the Tivoli Lifecycle Key Manager. Additionally, the previous generation key manager called the Encryption Key Manager (EKM) is still available. The policy implementation also depends on the environment. For example, in a z/OS environment, the encryption policies can be managed by Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS) structures; however, in Open Systems environments, the policy granularity is based on other methods, such as by drive or by a range of volume serial numbers on cartridges in a library.

1.4.3 Summary

Encryption capability, which is provided as a standard feature in the IBM TS1130, TS1120, LTO5, and LTO4 tape drives, makes encrypting data stored on tape cartridges much easier. This capability is increasingly important as legislation regulating protection of data becomes more wide-spread. The tape-drive-based encryption solutions developed by IBM and described here, coupled with the Encryption Key Manager component, enable key management and encryption in a wide variety of environments.

IBM provides tape drive encryption support in a broad range of operating systems environments:

- ► z/OS
- ► z/VM®
- ► z/VSE™
- ► z/TPF
- ► i5/OS®
- ► AIX®
- Linux® on System z®
- Linux on other platforms
- ► HP-UX
- Sun Solaris
- ▶ Windows® Server 2000, Windows 2003 Server, or Windows 2008 Server

Support is described in detail in the following chapters.

1.5 Concepts of tape data encryption

In this section, we discuss basic encryption concepts and cryptographic terms. Encryption has been used to exchange information in a secure and confidential way for many centuries. Encryption transforms data that is unprotected, or *plain text*, into encrypted data, or *ciphertext*, by using a *key*. It is very difficult to "break" ciphertext and change it back to clear text without the associated encryption key.

Computer technology has enabled increasingly sophisticated encryption algorithms. Working with the United States Government National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), IBM invented one of the first computer-based algorithms, Data Encryption Standard (DES), in 1974. With the advances in computer technology, DES is now considered obsolete. Today, there are several widely used encryption algorithms, including Triple DES (TDES) and Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).

Early encryption methods used the same key to encrypt clear text to generate cipher text and to decrypt the cipher text to regenerate the clear text. Because the same key is used for both encryption and decryption, this method is called *symmetric encryption*. All of the encryption algorithms previously mentioned use symmetric encryption.

It was only in the 1970s that cryptographers invented asymmetric key algorithms for encryption and decryption. These algorithms use different keys for encryption and decryption. The keys are mathematically related, but deriving one key from the other key is practically impossible. Encryption methods using different keys for encryption and decryption are called *asymmetric encryption*.

The IBM tape data encryption solution uses a combination of symmetric and asymmetric encryption methods. This combination of symmetric and asymmetric encryption algorithms is prevalent in many security solutions, including TLS, IPSEC, and Kerberos.

1.5.1 Symmetric key encryption

Symmetric key encryption uses identical keys, or keys that can be related through a simple transformation, for encryption and decryption. Everyone who has knowledge of the key can transform the ciphertext back to plain text. If you want to preserve confidentiality, you must protect your key and keep it a secret. Therefore, symmetric encryption is also called *private* or *secret key encryption*, which is not to be confused with the private key in an asymmetric key system.

In Figure 1-6 on page 9, we show a sample encryption and decryption data flow path. Here, we use the symmetric key AES_256_ITSO to encrypt plain text using the AES encryption algorithm, which yields encrypted data. The decryption of the enciphered text uses the same AES_256_ITSO symmetric key and the AES algorithm to decrypt the data back to its plain text format.

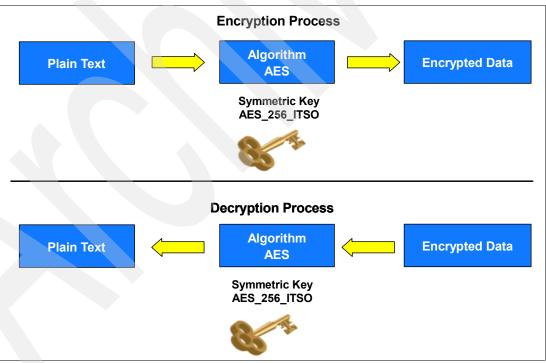


Figure 1-6 Symmetric key encryption

Symmetric key encryption algorithms are significantly faster than asymmetric encryption algorithms, which makes symmetric encryption an ideal candidate for encrypting large amounts of data.

In addition, the key sizes for symmetric encryption as opposed to asymmetric encryption are significantly different. At the time of this writing, a 128-bit secret key is used for symmetric

AES encryption and the Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) encryption algorithm suggests a 1024-bit key length.

Secret key algorithms can be architected to support encryption one bit at a time or by specified blocks of bits. The AES standard supports 128-bit block sizes and key sizes of 128, 192, and 256 bits. The IBM tape data encryption solution uses an AES-256 bit key.

Other well-known symmetric key examples include Twofish, Blowfish, Serpent, Cast5, DES, TDES, and IDEA.

Speed and short key length are advantages of symmetric encryption, but there are two drawbacks: the way that keys are exchanged and the number of keys required.

Secure exchange of keys has always been a problem with symmetric encryption. The sender and the recipient have to share a common, secret key. The sender of a confidential message must make sure that no one other than the intended recipient gets knowledge of the key. So, the sender has to transfer the key to the recipient in a secure way, for example, in a face-to-face meeting, through a trusted courier, or via a secure electronic channel. This method of transferring keys might work as long as only a few people are involved in the exchange of confidential information. When a larger number of people have to exchange keys, the distribution of secret keys becomes difficult and inefficient with this method.

The second drawback of symmetric encryption is the large number of required keys. When a group of people are to exchange symmetrically encrypted information, each possible pair of two people in this group has to share a secret key. The number of required keys grows very fast with the number of people in the group. The number of keys required in relation to the number of people can be calculated with the following formula, where *k* is the number of keys, and *n* is the number of people:

 $k_{n}=n(n-1)/2$

As Figure 1-7 illustrates, the number of required keys grows rapidly. For a group of 100 people, 4,950 different keys are required. A group of 1,000 people requires 499,500 keys. This helps to explain why key distribution and key management are such big challenges.

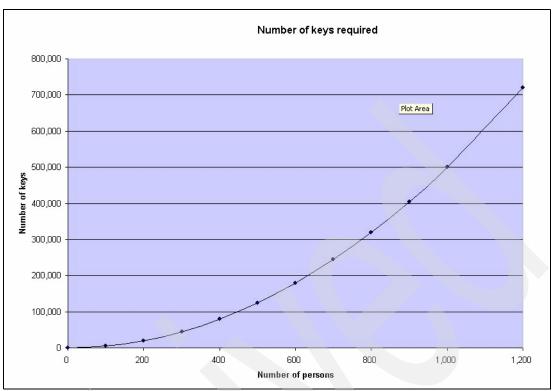


Figure 1-7 Number of keys required for symmetric encryption

The IBM tape data encryption solution utilizes an AES algorithm with a key length of 256 bits for the encryption on the tape drive. The AES algorithm is based on the Rijndael algorithm. AES is an accepted standard that supports a subset of the key sizes and block sizes that the Rijndael algorithms supports. (The Rijdindael algorithm supports block sizes of 128, 160, 192, 224, and 256 bits.)

The shortcomings of symmetric encryption in terms of key distribution and key management are addressed by asymmetric key encryption, which we describe in the next section.

1.5.2 Asymmetric key encryption

Asymmetric key encryption uses key pairs for encrypting and decrypting data. One key is used to encrypt the data, and the other key is used to decrypt the data. Because the key used for encrypting a message cannot be used for decrypting it, this key does not have to be kept a secret. It can be widely shared and is therefore called a *public key*. Anyone who wants to send secure data to an organization can use its public key. The receiving organization then uses its *private key* to decrypt the data. The private key is the corresponding half of the public-private key pair and must always be kept a secret. Because asymmetric encryption uses public-private key pairs, it is also called *public-private key encryption* or *public key encryption*.

Public-private key encryption is useful for sharing information between organizations and is widely used on the Internet today to secure transactions, including Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).

The concept of asymmetric encryption is relatively new. For centuries, cryptographers believed that the sender and the recipient had to share the same secret key. In the early 1970s, British cryptographers Ellis, Cocks, and Williamson devised a way to use different

keys for encrypting and decrypting data. Because they were working for GCHQ, a British intelligence agency, their findings were kept secret until 1997. In 1976, Whitfield Diffie and Martin Hellman invented a solution to the problem, which has since become known as Diffie-Hellman key exchange. In 1977 Ron Rivest, Adi Shamir, and Leonard Adleman published an algorithm for public key encryption.

Well-known examples of asymmetric key algorithms are:

- Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA)
- Diffie-Hellman
- Elliptic curve cryptography (ECC)
- ElGamal

Today, the RSA algorithm is the most widely used public key technique.

Note: RSA uses *trapdoor functions*. Trapdoor functions are mathematical functions that are easy to compute in one direction, but difficult to compute in the reverse direction without additional information. This additional information is called the trapdoor. In the case of RSA, the private key is the trapdoor.

The advantage of asymmetric key encryption is the ability to share secret data without sharing the same encryption key. But there are disadvantages, too. Asymmetric key encryption is computationally more intensive and therefore significantly slower than symmetric key encryption. In practice, you will often use a combination of symmetric and asymmetric encryption. We describe this method in 1.5.3, "Hybrid encryption" on page 14.

The IBM tape data encryption solution utilizes the asymmetric RSA algorithm to encrypt symmetric AES keys.

Digital signature

You can use public-private key pairs to protect the content of a message, and also to digitally sign a message. For example, if Tony wants to send JoHann a digitally signed message, Tony will not use JoHann's public key to encrypt the message, but Tony's own private key. The content of the encrypted message is not protected, because anyone can decrypt the message by using Tony's public key. But, if JoHann is able to decrypt Tony's message with Tony's public key, JoHann can be sure that Tony sent the message. JoHann has proof that the message was encrypted with Tony's private key and JoHann knows that only Tony has access to this key.

In practice, predominantly for efficiency reasons, a hash value of the message is signed rather than the whole message, but the overall procedure is the same.

In the previous example, JoHann has to make sure that Tony's public key really belongs to Tony, and not to someone pretending to be Tony. If JoHann cannot confirm this himself, JoHann will need a trusted third party to verify Tony's identity. A *certificate* issued and signed by a *Certification Authority* (CA) can confirm that the public key belongs to Tony. A certificate binds together the identity of a person or organization and its public key. If JoHann trusts the CA, JoHann can be sure that it really was Tony who sent the message.

We discuss certificates in detail in 1.5.4, "Digital certificates" on page 15.

Of course, you can combine public key encryption and a digital signature to produce a message that is both encryption-protected and digitally signed.

Example of public-private key encryption

Figure 1-8 shows an encryption and decryption data path when using public key encryption algorithms. In the diagram, the plain text is enciphered using the public key and an RSA encryption algorithm, which yields the encrypted data.

Starting with the enciphered text, a private key is used, with the RSA algorithm to decrypt the data back to plain text.

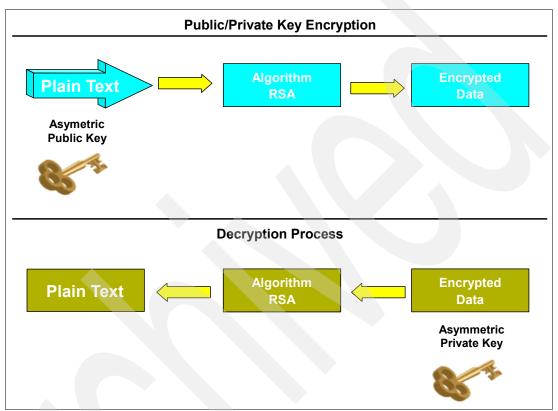


Figure 1-8 Public-private key encryption

In Figure 1-9 on page 14, we show a more complicated example of data protection and sharing using an asymmetric key pair. In this example, Tony has a private key, and JoHann has a copy of Tony's public key. Tony sends JoHann a message that is encrypted with Tony's private key. JoHann then uses the public key to decrypt the message. When the message is decrypted to clear text, this proves to JoHann that he is in fact communicating with Tony, because only Tony has a copy of the private key. JoHann then public-key encrypts the data that he wants to protect and sends it to Tony. Tony can use his private key to decrypt the data.

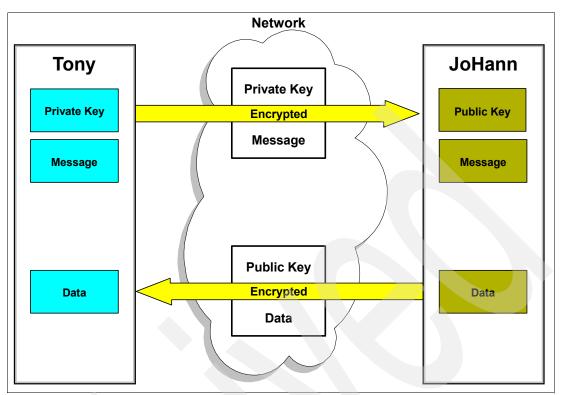


Figure 1-9 Identity verification using public-private key encryption

Both asymmetric and symmetric key encryption schemes are powerful ways to protect and secure data. In 2.2, "Methods of managing IBM tape encryption" on page 29, we discuss how to use these schemes in conjunction for the IBM tape data encryption solution to give us an extremely secure way of protecting data.

1.5.3 Hybrid encryption

In practice, encryption methods often combine symmetric and asymmetric encryption. Such hybrid approaches can take advantage of the speed of symmetric encryption and still securely exchange keys using asymmetric encryption.

Hybrid methods use a symmetric data key to actually encrypt and decrypt data. They do not transfer this symmetric data key in the clear, but use public-private key encryption to encrypt the data key. The recipient is able to decrypt the encrypted data key and use the data key to encrypt or decrypt a message.

Hybrid encryption methods allow you to combine secure and convenient key exchange with fast and efficient encryption of large amounts of data.

The IBM tape data encryption solution uses a symmetric AES data key to encrypt and decrypt data. This data key is protected by the asymmetric RSA algorithm and is not available in the clear when tape drives and the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) communicate. For details about TKLM, refer to 2.1, "Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager" on page 24.

Application-Managed Encryption does not use asymmetric encryption. Refer to 2.2.4, "Application-managed encryption" on page 34 for more information.

1.5.4 Digital certificates

Digital certificates are a way to bind public key information with an identity. Part of the information that is stored in a digital certificate is:

- ► Name of the issuer
- Subject Distinguished Name (DN)
- Public key belonging to the owner
- Validity date for the public key
- Serial number of the digital certificate
- Digital signature of the issuer

In this section, we discuss the X.509 Public Key Infrastructure (PKI), certificate chains, certificate requests, and certificate responses. X.509 is a well established and accepted standard for certificate management.

Certificate requirement to encrypt data

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requires at least one X.509 digital certificate, which contains a public/private key pair, to protect the data encryption key that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server creates when encrypting data on 3592 tape drives.

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager allows for two digital certificate aliases to be defined per write request. One of the two aliases (labels) specified must have a private key in the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager keystore when the tape or disk is created. This guarantees that the creator is able to read the tape or disk. The other alias (label) could be a public key from a partner, which the partner is able to decrypt with its private key. In order to read an encrypted tape or disk, the correct private key is needed.

There are two methods of setting up digital certificates:

- Create your own public/private key pair and corresponding certificate to be used to write and encrypt to tape or disk so that you can read and decrypt the data at a later date.
- Obtain a public key and corresponding certificate from a partner, to be used to write and encrypt tapes or disks that can be read and decrypted by your partner.

Figure 1-10 on page 16 shows a sample digital certificate.

In general, using a public key to encrypt data secures that data, ensuring confidentiality. Using a private key to encrypt data also ensures:

- Proof of identity
- Message integrity
- Non-repudiation

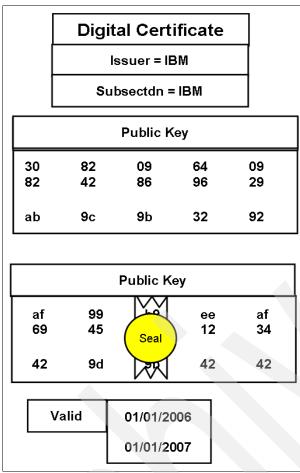


Figure 1-10 Sample digital certificate

When sending information that was private key encrypted, the receiver of the message knows that the message must have been sent by the entity with the private key; the receiver also can verify that the message was not tampered with. Finally, the entity receiving a message that was private key encrypted knows that the message that they got cannot be denied by the sender. In other words, because only the sender has the private key, the sender must have sent it.

Certificate authorities

A *certificate authority (CA)* is a company that holds and makes available trusted certificates. Companies can send certificates to a CA to be added to the chain of trust. As long as a company trusts the CA, certificates that are issued by that CA can be trusted.

For example, Figure 1-11 on page 17 illustrates what company ZABYXC does to generate a certificate request to the JohannTonyArtCA third-party certificate authority (CA) company. In the figure, we see that company ZABYXC already trusts JohannTonyArtCA, because ZABYXC has a copy of the JohannTonyArtRootCA in its certificate repository. This copy of JohannTonyArtRootCA has only the public key and an encrypted copy of the public key, which is encrypted with JohannTonyArtRootCA's private key.

Company ZABYXC also has a self-signed personal certificate with a public and a private key associated with it. Using certificate managing tools, company ZABYXC exports a copy of its self-signed personal certificate that includes only the certificate information, the public key, and the encrypted version of the public key.

This certificate request is sent to JohannTonyArtCA.

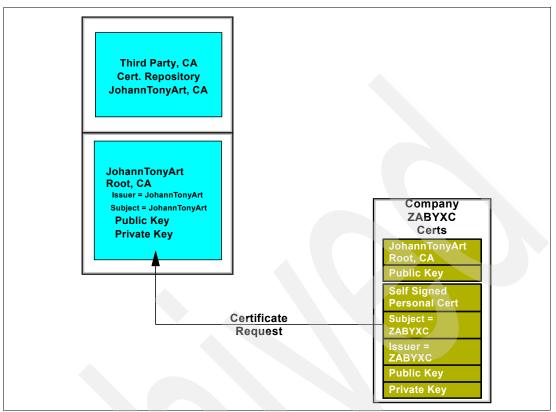


Figure 1-11 Certificate request

In Figure 1-12 on page 18, JohannTonyArtCA receives the certificate request from company ZABYXC. JohannTonyArtCA then uses the private key from JohannTonyArtRootCA to encrypt a copy of the certificate request's public key and attaches both the clear public key and the new encrypted copy of the public key to a certificate response. In addition, the certificate response has the issuer changed to JohannTonyArtCA. This response is sent to company ZABYXC.

When Company ZABYXC receives the certificate response from JohannTonyArtCA, Company ZABYXC imports the certificate into the company's certificate repository. The company replaces the self-signed personal certificate in the repository, and it keeps the private key previously associated with the personal certificate.

Company ZABYXC can verify that the certificate response came from JohannTonyArtCA, because they have a copy of JohannTonyArtRootCA. They can use the public key from JohannTonyArtRootCA to verify that the certificate response came from JohannTonyArtCA.

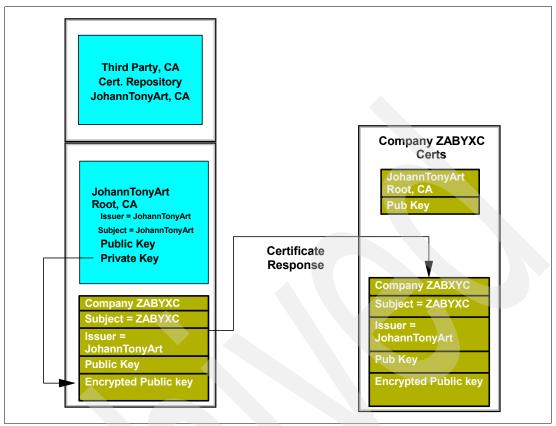


Figure 1-12 Certificate response

If company ZABYXC wants another company to share data with it, the company can now export a copy of its personal certificate, which contains its public key, and the public key signed by JohannTonyArtRootCA. When ZABYXC sends this certificate to a business partner, the business partner can add JohannTonyArtRootCA to its own certificate repository and then use that to verify the personal certificate sent to it by Company ZABYXC.

Having an extended certificate chain when dealing with PKI is possible. In a longer certificate chain, the JohannTonyArtRootCA is the root CA with a validity of several years. Next in the chain is a ZABYXCCA signed by the JohannTonyArtRootCA. This certificate can have a shorter validity period and might have to be re-requested. The third-party CA keeps the private key information for these certificates. When company ZABYXC generates a certificate request in this situation, it receives a certificate response signed by company ZABYXCCA.

Figure 1-13 on page 19 shows an extended certificate chain. To verify certificate validity in this situation, the whole chain has to be in the certificate repository.

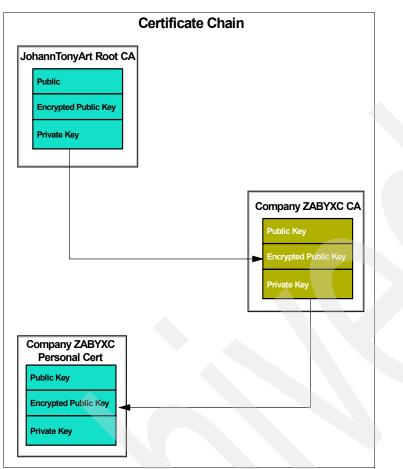


Figure 1-13 Certificate chain

Secure Sockets Layer example

Figure 1-14 on page 20 shows a simple Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) handshake with ClientAuthentication required. The default SSL setup for the TKLM is to not do ClientAuthentication.

In the first portion of the handshake, the client sends a "Hello" message to the server; the server responds by sending its own "Hello" message back and sending its trusted certificate. If the client finds that it does indeed have a trusted certificate entry to verify that the server is in fact the correct server, the handshake continues. In this example, we perform ClientAuthentication, which causes the server to send a certificate request to the client. After this step, the server "Hello" response is completed.

The next portion of the handshake is related to the ClientAuth value set to true. Here, the client sends its certificate to the server, and if the server finds that it has the matching certificate entry in its truststore, the handshake can continue, because the client's identity is verified.

After the client and the server have verified that they are indeed who they claim to be, they exchange keys and decide with which SSL cipher to communicate. Data can then be encrypted and sent across the network. Not only does SSL allow data communication to be protected between a client and server, it also is used to prove client and server identities.

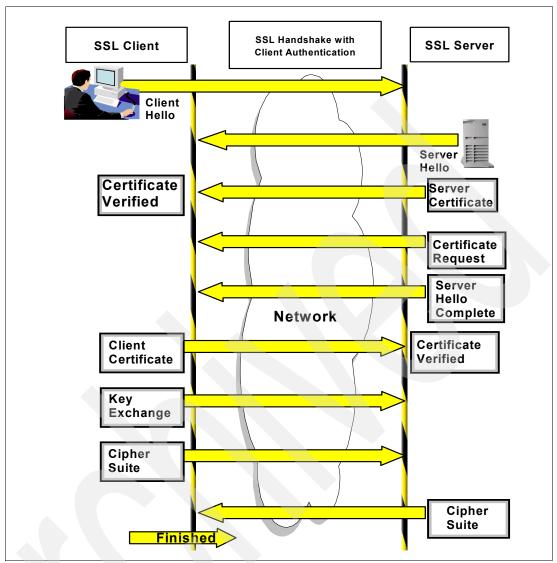


Figure 1-14 SSL handshake example using ClientAuth

1.6 Simplifying key management with TKLM

Encryption and key management is an integral part of managing the growth of sensitive data across the enterprise. IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager provides exceptional client value because it helps reduce encryption management costs related to setup, use, and expiration of encryption keys. It enables organizations to address compliance with disclosure laws and regulations, and it helps ensure against loss of information due to key mismanagement. Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager transparently detects encryption-capable media to assign necessary authorization and encryption keys.

1.6.1 Encryption as a critical business process

Many administrators implement encryption throughout their data centers, but others are reluctant to implement encryption at all. A major reason for avoiding encryption implementation is fear of losing the keys needed to decrypt the data. Even administrators who have experience with good key management systems for tape drive encryption and who

believe that key loss can be prevented often have concerns about complexity, interoperability, performance, and cost. In addition, administrators must decide whether to encrypt data at rest, data in flight, or both. Encrypting tape cartridges inside a physically protected data center might appear unnecessary; however, as tape cartridges are retired and physically moved outside the data center, data on these devices is exposed to risk.

1.6.2 Encryption and key management for compliance, availability, retention and security

Implementing encryption and key management can help organizations reduce risks, address audit deficiencies, and maintain continuous, reliable access to information. Because expired or inactive data accounts for a large percentage of total data storage, encryption and key management solutions need to support data that an organization might use in the future as well as securely dispose of data that is no longer needed. Furthermore, organizations might have data retention policies, which, if implemented using encryption and key lifecycle management, can simplify and make more predictable the erasure of data.

Effective encryption and key management eradicates inhibitors to innovation by providing effective control over sensitive business assets and efficient automation of processes for managing access to critical data. Encryption and key management as implemented by IBM can help secure data for new business models, such as the use of service providers, and helps enable data sharing without secret key distribution by leveraging public/private key cryptography.

1.6.3 Securing data automatically on self-encrypting drives

Corporations, seeking to avoid data breaches and customer notifications required by privacy laws, are attempting to erase data on retired drives before sending them off premises. Risks are abundant. Insider threats are growing. Managers of branch offices and small-to-midsize businesses without strong physical security also worry about external theft. Now, securing data automatically against theft or loss can be achieved with the simplest, most secure encryption and key management.

Data in flight across a fibre channel storage area network (SAN) is not a significant security risk because the SAN is an internal, protected network. In order to attack in-flight data, a hacker has to tap into a switch (or fibre), decode thousands of SAN packets from different sources, and reassemble them to read the data. Malicious attackers typically target data at rest on tape cartridges. Greater vulnerabilities reside on databases and file systems stored on network-attached storage (NAS), SAN, and file servers where digital assets such as intellectual property, credit cards, social security numbers and financial information reside. But it can be a complex task to secure each database and file system individually. Building encryption into the storage infrastructure makes encryption deployment and management dramatically simpler.

1.6.4 Addressing objections to encryption of data at rest

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager and self-encrypting storage provide advantages to encrypting data at rest that far exceed implementation costs. In the past, encryption methods decreased computing performance, but IBM self-encrypting storage represents the next generation of encryption, with less than one percent impact on performance. Organizations that were reluctant to adopt encryption due to performance drains can now encrypt at native drive speed.

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager is simple to install and configure and requires no application or server changes, so there is minimal impact to a customer's environment. Although other storage encryption solutions can significantly add to the storage solution cost, IBM's self-encrypting storage solution adds only a small, incremental cost to the storage solution.

IBM tape encryption methods

In this chapter, we discuss *Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager* (TKLM), which is a Java software program that manages keys enterprise-wide and provides encryption-enabled tape drives with keys for encryption and decryption.

We describe various methods of managing IBM tape encryption. These methods differ in where the encryption policies reside, where key management is performed, whether a key manager is required, and, if a key manager is required, how the tape drives communicate with it.

IBM supports three methods of encrypting data on tape:

- Library-managed encryption (LME)
- Application-managed encryption (AME)
- System-managed encryption (SME)

Only two of these methods, SME and LME, require the implementation of an external component, the TKLM, to provide and manage keys. With AME, key provisioning and key management are handled by the application.

When describing the encryption methods, we trace the flow of data and keys. We explain how the tape drive communicates with the application and how symmetric keys and asymmetric keys are transferred to the drive. For AME, we describe how the application communicates with the tape drives.

In each section, we briefly discuss the criteria that can influence your decision for or against a specific encryption method. For more information, refer to Chapter 4, "Planning for software and hardware" on page 65.

2.1 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager

It is common for an enterprise to have a large number of symmetric keys, asymmetric keys, and certificates. All of these keys and certificates have to be managed. Key management can be handled either internally by an application, such as Tivoli Storage Manager, or by the hardware itself using internal licensed code. In this section, we discuss the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM).

TKLM is an application that performs key management tasks for IBM hardware that is encryption-enabled, like the TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives and Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium 4 and 5 Tape Drives. The tasks provide, protect, store, and maintain encryption keys that are used to encrypt information being written to, and decrypt information being read from tape media. TKLM operates on a variety of systems.

TKLM can be a shared resource deployed in several locations within an enterprise. It is capable of serving numerous IBM encrypting tape drives regardless of where those drives reside (for example, in tape library subsystems, connected to mainframe systems through various types of channel connections, or installed in other computing systems).

2.1.1 What is new in version 2

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager enables you to locally create, distribute, back up, archive, and manage the life cycle of keys and certificates in your enterprise.

New functions in version 2 of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager include:

- Role-based access control that provides permissions to do tasks such as create, modify, and delete for specific device groups. Most permissions are associated with specific device groups.
- Extension of support to devices using industry-standard Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) for encryption of stored data and the corresponding cryptographic key management. This reduces dependency on specific vendors and enhances the product's standing with peer-reviewed protocols.
- Extension of support to devices using Internet Key Exchange (IKEv2-SCSI) Version 1 for secure interchange of keys between cryptographic units.

Note: Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager does not support IKEv2-SCSI if you use the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS). If your system uses IKEv2-SCSI, do not specify a value for the fips property that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager provides.

Serving of symmetric keys to DS5000 storage servers.

Version 2 can provide administration and ongoing maintenance of keys served to DS5000 storage servers and restrict the set of machines with which a device such as a disk drive can be associated by associating a device to an existing machine in the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager database.

- Additional usability changes.
- Supported platforms:

Red Hat Enterprise Linux RHEL 5 - x86-32 SuSE Linux (SLES) 10.0 - x86-32 SuSE Linux (SLES) 11.0 Enterprise Server x86-32 - x86-32 Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition (32 bit mode) Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition (32 bit mode) Windows Server 2008 Enterprise Edition (32 bit mode) Windows Server 2008 Standard Edition (32 bit mode) AIX 5.3 System i/p AIX 6.1 System i/p

Note: Refer to Chapter 9, "Administration" on page 161 for a detailed discussion about the new functions.

2.1.2 Tivoli Lifecycle Key Manager components and resources

The sole task of the Tivoli Lifecycle Key Manager is to handle the serving of keys to the encrypting tape drives. The TKLM does not perform any cryptographic operations, such as generating encryption keys, and it does not provide storage for keys and certificates. Instead, TKLM relies on external components to perform these tasks. In the following sections, we describe the components of TKLM and the resources that are used by TKLM.

- Lifecycle functions
 - Notification of certificate expiration through the Tivoli Integrated Portal (TIP)
 - Automated rotation of certificates
 - Automated rotation of groups of keys
- Usability enhancements
 - Provides a graphical user interface (GUI)
 - Initial configuration wizards
 - Migration wizards
 - User defined device groups
 - RBAC
 - adding devices to TKLM new method
- Integrated backup and restore of TKLM file
 - One button to create and restore a single backup packaged as a JAR file
- ► TIP installation manager
 - Simple to use installation for Windows, Linux, AIX, Solaris
 - Can be a silent installation
- Machine affinity
- LTO variable length serial number

Figure 2-1 shows the TKLM components and external resources.

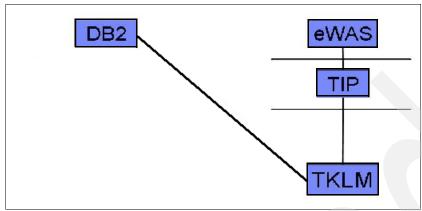


Figure 2-1 TKLM components and resources

DB2

TKLM stores the drive table in DB2®, giving the user a more robust interface for managing drives, and the keys and certificates that are associated with those drives. This enables the user to more easily search and query that information.

Enterprise WebSphere Application Server (eWAS)

The Enterprise WebSphere® Application Server, identified in the figure as *eWAS*, is a software application server that is built using open standards such as Java EE, XML, and Web Services. It is supported on the following platforms: Windows, AIX, Linux, Solaris, i/OS and z/OS. Beginning with Version 6.1 and now into Version 7, the open standard specifications are aligned and common across all the platforms. Platform exploitation, to the extent it takes place, is done below the open standard specification line.

Enterprise WebSphere Application Server works with a number of web servers, including Apache HTTP Server, Netscape Enterprise Server, Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS), IBM HTTP Server for i5/OS, IBM HTTP Server for z/OS, and IBM HTTP Server for AIX/Linux/Microsoft Windows/Solaris. WebSphere Application Server uses port 9060 for connection.

IBM Tivoli Integrated Portal

IBM Tivoli Integrated Portal (TIP) is a standards-based architecture for web administration. Tivoli Integrated Portal enables administrative interfaces as individual plug-ins to a common console network. It enables single sign-on, an authentication process that enables you to enter one user ID and password to access multiple applications.

Tip: The option to automatically accept unknown tape drives can facilitate the task of populating the tape drive table with your drives. For security reasons, you might want to turn off this option as soon as all of your tape drives have been added to the table. However, in a business continuity and recovery site, like Sunguard or IBM BCRS, accepting unknown tape drives is required.

Configuration file

TKLM has an editable configuration file with additional configuration parameters that are not offered in the GUI. The file can be text-edited, but the preferred method is to modify the file through the TKLM command-line interface (CLI).

We discuss the configuration of TKLM extensively in Chapter 9, "Administration" on page 161, where we describe the full set of configuration options.

Java security keystore

The keystore is defined as part of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) and is an element of the Java Security components, which are, in turn, part of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE). A *keystore* holds the certificates and keys (or pointers to the certificates and keys) used by TKLM to perform cryptographic operations. A keystore can be either hardware-based or software-based.

TKLM supports several types of Java keystores, offering a variety of operational characteristics to meet your requirements.

TKLM Open systems

TKLM on open systems supports the JCE keystore (JCEKS). This keystore supports both CLEAR key symmetric keys, and CLEAR key asymmetric keys. Symmetric keys are used for LTO4 and LTO5 encryption drives and asymmetric keys are used for TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives.

Cryptographic services

IBM Java Security components provide cryptographic capabilities; TKLM itself does not provide cryptographic capabilities and therefore does not require, nor is it allowed to obtain, FIPS 140-2 certification. However, TKLM takes advantage of the cryptographic capabilities of the IBM Java Virtual Machine (JVM) in the IBM Java Cryptographic Extension component and enables the selection and use of the IBMJCEFIPS cryptographic provider, which has a FIPS 140-2 Level 1 certification. By setting the FIPS configuration parameter to 0N in the Configuration Properties file, either through text editing or by using the TKLM CLI, you can make TKLM use the IBMJCEFIPS provider for all cryptographic functions.

For more information about the IBMJCEFIPS provider, its selection, and its use, see:

http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/java/jdk/security/50/FIPShowto.html

2.1.3 Key exchange

TKLM acts as a process awaiting key generation or key retrieval requests sent to it through a TCP/IP communication path between TKLM and the tape library, tape controller, tape subsystem, device driver, or tape drive. When a tape drive writes encrypted data, it first requests an encryption key from TKLM. The tasks that TKLM performs upon receipt of the request are different for TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives than for LTO Ultrium Tape Drives.

TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives

TKLM requests an Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) key from the cryptographic services and serves it to the tape drives in either of two protected forms:

- Encrypted or wrapped, using Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) key pairs. TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives write this copy of the key to the cartridge memory and three additional places on the tape media in the cartridge for redundancy.
- Separately wrapped for secure transfer to the tape drive, where it is unwrapped upon arrival and the key inside is used to encrypt the data being written to tape.

Additionally, the libraries now support SSL-encrypted connections between the TKLM and library for key exchanges. However, note that when not using SSL for key exchange the key

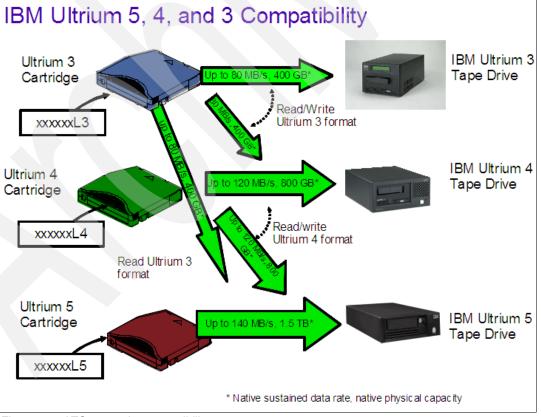
material will be encrypted in another fashion. The transport of keys is always secure across the TCP/IP connection.

When an encrypted tape cartridge is read by a TS1120 or TS1130 Tape Drive, the protected AES key on the tape is sent to TKLM, where the wrapped AES key is unwrapped. The AES key is then wrapped with a different key for secure transfer back to the tape drive, where it is unwrapped and used to decrypt the data stored on the tape. TKLM also allows protected AES keys to be rewrapped, or rekeyed, using different RSA keys from the original keys that were used when the tape was written. Rekeying is useful when an unexpected need arises to export volumes to business partners whose public keys were not included; it eliminates having to rewrite the entire tape and enables a tape cartridge's data key to be reencrypted with a business partner's public key. For a more detailed description, refer to 2.2.3, "Encrypting and decrypting with SME and LME" on page 32.

LTO Ultrium 4 and Ultrium 5 Tape Drives

The TKLM fetches an existing AES key from a keystore and wraps it for secure transfer to the tape drive, where it is unwrapped upon arrival and used to encrypt the data being written to tape.

When an encrypted tape is read by a Tape Drive, the TKLM fetches the required key from the keystore, based on the information in the Key ID on the tape, and serves it to the tape drive wrapped for secure transfer.



See Figure 2-2 on page 28 for a quick view of LTO media cartridge compatibility.

Figure 2-2 LTO5, 4 and 3 compatibility

2.2 Methods of managing IBM tape encryption

There are three methods of tape encryption management supported by the IBM tape data encryption solution. These methods differ in where the encryption policy engine resides, where key management is performed, and how the TKLM is connected to the drive. Encryption policies control which volumes need to be encrypted.

Key management and the encryption policies can be located in any one of the following three environmental layers:

- Library layer
- Application layer
- System layer

In accordance with the layers, we call these methods:

- Library-managed encryption (LME)
- Application-managed encryption (AME)
- System-managed encryption (SME)

Not all operating systems, applications, and tape libraries support all of these methods, and where they are supported, not all of the methods are equally suitable. When you plan for tape encryption, select the encryption method based on your operating environment. In the following sections, we explain the characteristics of AME, SME, and LME.

2.2.1 System-managed encryption

In a system-managed encryption (SME) implementation, encryption policies reside within the system layer. This method of tape encryption requires TKLM for key management. SME is fully transparent to the application and library layers. Figure 2-3 shows a schematic illustration of SME.

SME is supported on the following open systems platforms:

- ► AIX
- Windows
- ► Linux
- Solaris

On open systems platforms, the IBM tape device driver is used for specifying encryption policies on a per-drive basis.

SME offers you centralized enterprise-class key management, which facilitates tape interchange and migration. Another advantage is its support for stand-alone drives. Drawbacks are its policy granularity on open systems, additional responsibilities for the storage administrator, and the dependency of data access on the availability of the TKLM and the key path.

SME shares most of its advantages and disadvantages with LME, but with two major differences. Naturally, LME does not support stand-alone tape drives. However, in an open systems environment, LME gives you better policy granularity than SME because you can control encryption on a per-volume basis with TS3500 tape libraries.

In an open systems environment with stand-alone drives and an application that does not support encryption, SME is the only choice. In all other environments, consider LME as an alternative.

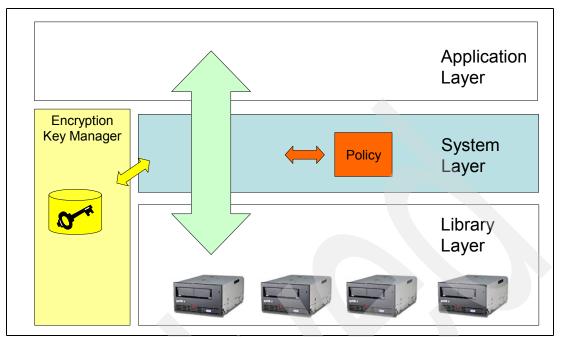


Figure 2-3 System-managed encryption (SME)

System-managed encryption for open systems

Encryption policies specifying when to use encryption are set up in the IBM tape device driver. For details about setting up system-managed encryption on tape drives in an Open Systems environment, see the *IBM Tape Device Driver Installation and User's Guide*, GC27-2130, and the planning and operator guide for your tape library.

On open systems this support can be described as *in-band*, where tape drive requests to the TKLM component travel over the Fibre Channels to the server hosting the TKLM.

2.2.2 Library-managed encryption

In a library-managed encryption (LME) implementation, encryption policies reside within the tape library. This method of tape encryption requires TKLM for key management. LME is fully transparent to the application and system layers. Figure 2-4 shows an illustration of library-managed encryption.

LME offers you the broadest range of application and operating system support. Centralized enterprise-class key management facilitates tape interchange and migration. If you implement LME on a TS3500 tape library, you get policy granularity on a per-volume basis. LME comes with additional responsibilities for the storage administrator as compared to AME. Data access depends on the availability of TKLM and the key path.

In most open systems environments, LME is the preferred method for tape encryption.

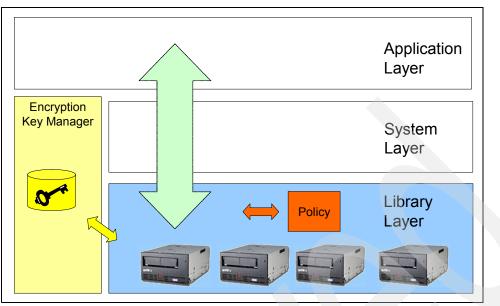


Figure 2-4 Library-managed encryption (LME)

LME can be implemented on:

- Open systems-attached TS3500 tape library with TS1120, TS1130 and LTO Ultrium 4 and 5 Tape Drives
- Open systems-attached TS3400 tape library with TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives
- TS3310, TS3200 with LTO Ultrium 4 and 5 Tape Drives
- TS3100 tape library with LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drives

Key generation and management is handled by TKLM running on a host with a TCP/IP connection to the library. Policy control and keys pass through the library-to-drive interface; therefore, encryption is transparent to the applications.

For TS3500 tape libraries, you can use barcode encryption policies (BEPs) to specify when to use encryption. On an IBM TS3500 Tape Library, you set these policies through the IBM System Storage Tape Library Specialist web interface. With BEPs, policies are based on cartridge volume serial numbers. LME also allows for encryption of all volumes in a library, independent of barcodes.

For certain applications, such as Symantec NetBackup, LME includes support for Internal Label Encryption Policy (ILEP). When ILEP is configured, the TS1120 and TS1130 or LTO Ultrium 4 and Ulrium 5 Tape Drive automatically derives the encryption policy and key information from the metadata written on the tape volume by the application. Refer to your tape library operator's guide for details.

The following IBM tape libraries support library-managed encryption:

- ► IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library
- ► IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library
- ► IBM System Storage TS3310 Tape Library
- ► IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library
- ► IBM System Storage TS3100 Tape Library

Note: System-managed encryption and library-managed encryption interoperate with one another. A tape that is encrypted using SME can be decrypted using LME, and the other way around, provided that they both have access to the same keys and certificates.

2.2.3 Encrypting and decrypting with SME and LME

Encryption and decryption with system-managed encryption and with library-managed encryption are identical as far as their process flow.

SME and LME encryption processes

Figure 2-5 on page 33 describes the flow of encrypted data to tape, and how keys are communicated to the tape drive and then stored on the tape media. In this particular example, we assume TKLM is running on an abstract server, and that the tape library and, consequently, the tape drives are connected to another abstract server. These can be the same server or different servers; whether the server is the same or not does not affect the outcome.

We assume that a certificate from a business partner had been imported into this keystore. It only has a public key associated with it; the business partner has the corresponding private key.

Now, our server sends a write request to the drive. Our drive is encryption-capable, and the host has requested encryption. As part of this initial write, the drive obtains two Key Encrypting Key (KEK) labels from the host or a proxy that are aliases for two Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) algorithm KEKs. The drive requests that the TKLM send it a data key (DK) and to encrypt the DK using the public KEKs.

The TKLM validates that the drive is in its list of valid drives. After validation, the TKLM obtains a random DK from cryptographic services. The TKLM then retrieves the public halves of the KEKs aliased by the two KEK labels. The TKLM then requests that cryptographic services create two encrypted instances of the DK using the public halves of the KEKs, thereby creating two Externally Encrypted Data Keys (EEDKs).

The TKLM sends both EEDKs to the tape drive. The drive stores the EEDKs in the cartridge memory (CM) and three locations on the tape. The TKLM also sends the DK to the drive in a secure manner. The drive uses the separately secured DK to encrypt the data.

The two modes for creating the EEDK are:

- ► CLEAR or LABEL: In this mode, the KEK label is stored in the EEDK.
- ► Hash: In this mode, a Hash of the public half of the KEK is stored in the EEDK.

When sharing business partner KEKs, we recommend using the Hash mode. The Hash mode lets each party use any KEK label when importing a certificate into their keystore. The alternative is to use the CLEAR or LABEL mode and then have each party agree on a KEK label.

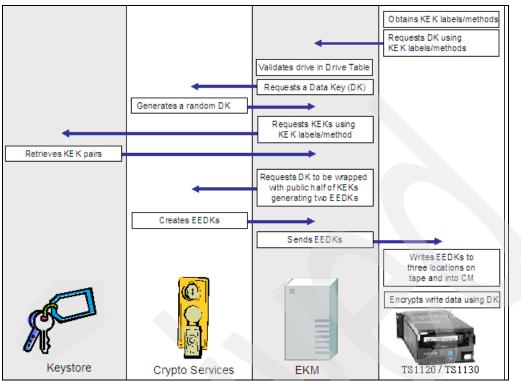


Figure 2-5 Key and data flow for encryption using SME or LME

SME and LME decryption processes for TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drive

Figure 2-6 on page 34 shows the key and data flow for decryption. In this example, we assume that the data was encrypted at another site. For the decryption process, the tape has two EEDKs stored in its cartridge memory. We call these EEDK1 and EEDK2. EEDK1 was stored with the CLEAR (or LABEL) mode selected, and EEDK2 was stored with the Hash mode selected.

An encrypted tape is mounted for a read or a write append. The two EEDKs are read from the tape. The drive asks the TKLM to decrypt the DK from the EEDKs. The TKLM validates that the drive is in its list of valid drives. After validation, the TKLM requests the keystore to provide the private halves of each KEK used to create the EEDKs. The KEK label associated with EEDK1 cannot be found in the keystore, but the Hash of the public key for EEDK2 is found in the keystore.

The TKLM asks cryptographic services to decrypt the DK from EEDK2 using the private half of the KEK associated with EEDK2. The TKLM then sends the DK to the drive in a secure manner. The drive then decrypts the data on the tape. In our example, we described reading from an encrypted tape. Exactly the same communication between tape drive and the TKLM takes place for a write-append.

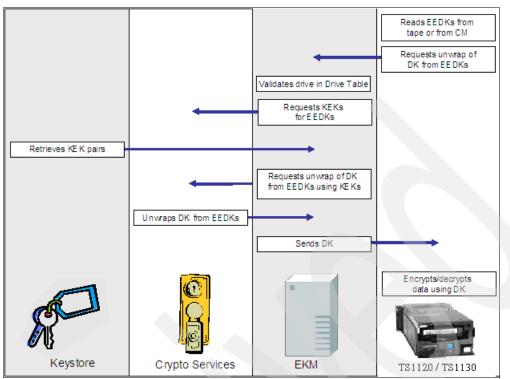


Figure 2-6 Key and data flow for decryption using SME or LME

2.2.4 Application-managed encryption

For application-managed encryption (AME), the application has to be capable of generating and managing encryption keys and of managing encryption policies. IBM Tivoli Storage Manager includes these capabilities. Policies specifying when encryption is to be used are defined through the application interface. The policies and keys pass through the data path between the application layer and the encrypting tape drives. Encryption is the result of interaction between the application and the encryption-enabled tape drive and does not require any changes to the system and library layers. This is illustrated in Figure 2-7 on page 35.

AME is the easiest encryption method to implement and adds the fewest responsibilities for the storage administrator. Because the data path and the key path are the same, there is no additional risk to data and drive availability. Policy granularity depends on the application. With Tivoli Storage Manager, you control encryption on a storage pool basis. There is no centralized key management with AME because the application generates, stores, and manages the encryption keys. The lack of centralized key management makes tape interchange and migration more difficult.

AME can be the most convenient solution when IBM Tivoli Storage Manager is the only application that utilizes tape encryption.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager does not restrict you to using AME. You can also choose SME or LME to encrypt Tivoli Storage Manager data.

Note: Tape volumes written and encrypted using the AME method can only be decrypted with an AME solution. In addition, because the data keys reside only in the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager database, the same database must be used.

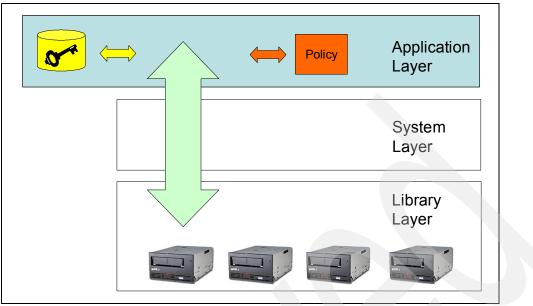


Figure 2-7 Application-managed encryption (AME)

AME on IBM TS1120, TS1130 and LTO Ultrium 4 and 5 Tape Drives can use either of two encryption command sets, the IBM encryption command set developed for TKLM or the T10 command set defined by the International Committee for Information Technology Standards (INCITS).

AME using the TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives is supported in the following IBM libraries:

- IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library
- ► IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library

Application-managed tape encryption using LTO Ultrium 4 and Ultrium 5 Tape Drives is supported in the following IBM tape drives and libraries:

- IBM System Storage TS2340 Tape Drive Express Model S43 and Xcc/HVEC 3580S4X
- ► IBM System Storage TS3100 Tape Library
- IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library
- IBM System Storage TS3310 Tape Library
- IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library

For details about setting up AME, refer to your Tivoli Storage Manager documentation or the following website:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp

Example of application-managed encryption

In this section, we describe how data is encrypted to tape using Tivoli Storage Manager as the key manager. Figure 2-8 on page 36 shows a high-level diagram depicting how data and keys travel to and from the tape when writing from the beginning of the tape (BOT).

In the figure, a tape drive mounts a tape for encryption. The tape drive then sends its tape ID or VOLSER to IBM Tivoli Storage Manager.IBM Tivoli Storage Manager then generates a 256-bit AES data key, encrypts the data key, and stores the encrypted data key and the tape identifier in the Tivoli Storage Manager database. IBM Tivoli Storage Manager then sends the data key to the tape drive. Using the AES algorithms and the data key that was sent to it, the tape drive encrypts data to the tape.

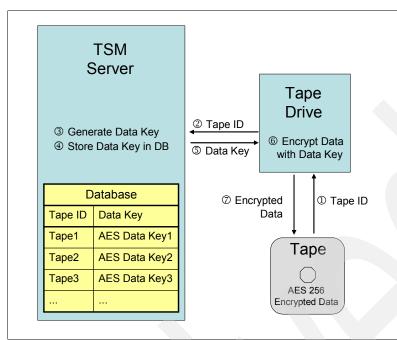


Figure 2-8 Application-managed encryption data flow for encryption

Figure 2-9 on page 37 shows the flow of data and keys when using AME to read or write-append an encrypted cartridge. In this diagram, Tivoli Storage Manager is the application that controls encryption.

In our example, an encrypted tape is mounted for decryption. The tape drive reads the tape ID or VOLSER and sends that information to IBM Tivoli Storage Manager. IBM Tivoli Storage Manager looks up that tape ID in its internal database and finds the entry associated with it. IBM Tivoli Storage Manager then decrypts the data key from the entry. IBM Tivoli Storage Manager then sends the data key to the tape drive.

Now, the tape drive can read data from the tape, decrypting the data as it reads using the 256-bit AES data key and the AES algorithms to yield clear data.

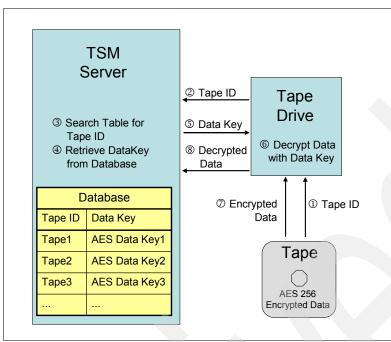


Figure 2-9 Application-managed encryption data flow for decryption

2.2.5 Mixed mode example

In the previous sections, we described how encryption works with different tape encryption methods. This section describes a mixed environment, using different types of tape encryption methods. In reality, an enterprise is likely to have several types of systems. The tape solutions can commingle and allow all of those disparate setups to take advantage of tape data encryption.

Figure 2-10 on page 38 shows an enterprise taking advantage of both in-band and out-of-band encryption. In addition, this picture shows both a system-managed encryption solution and a library-managed encryption solution implemented concurrently in the same enterprise.

In our example, a TKLM is running on a z/OS system, taking advantage of hardware cryptography for its keystore. There is also a miscellaneous IBM server system with a TKLM running and an open systems server attached to a TS3500 tape library. The z/OS system and the open systems server are attached to two separate libraries. The IBM server, which is running a backup TKLM, is not attached to any libraries, but it is attached to the shared LAN/WAN.

We can see that the open systems server is running LME on its library. All data is sent across Fibre Channel to the library to be encrypted to tape. The keys that this library uses for encryption, however, come across the network from either the z/OS TKLM or the IBM server TKLM.

The library that is attached to the z/OS system shows both in-band and out-of-band encryption. The z/OS system attached to the library is using in-band encryption. TKLM communication to the library is across the Fibre Channel, and data is also sent across the Fibre Channel. In addition, this library is pointing to the backup TKLM on the IBM server system. The keys that are served to the library from the IBM server flow across the network, which requires the library's control unit to have network access.

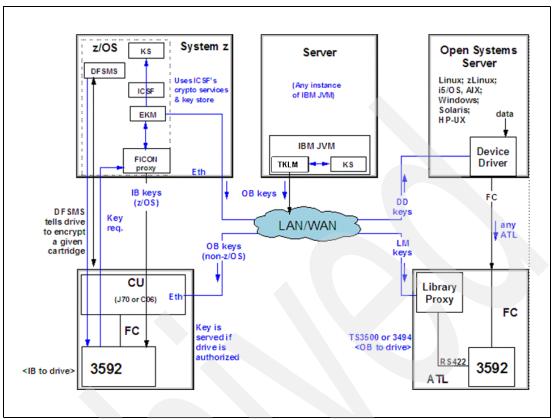


Figure 2-10 Encryption in a mixed environment

Tape drives, libraries and media relationship

A quick view of the relationships among the components is shown in Table 2-1

Tape Library	Tape Drive	Tape Media	Encryption Method
TS2900	3572-S4H	LTO4	LME, AME, SME
TS3100	LTO4	LTO4	LME, AME, SME Using T10, for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only.
TS3200	LTO4, LTO5	LTO4, LTO5	LME, AME, SME Using T10, for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only.
TS3310	LTO4 SAS and Fibre Channel	LTO4	LME, AME, SME
TS3400	TS1120	3592-JA, JB	LME, AME, SME
TS3500	LTO4, LTO5, TS1120, TS1130	LTO4, LTO5, 3592-JA, JB, JJ, WORM-JR, JW, JX	LME,AME, SME

Table 2-1 Encryption hardware components relationship

IBM System Storage tape and tape automation for encryption

A wide variety of IBM tape products support encryption. In this chapter, we introduce and describe the IBM tape drives, the IBM tape libraries, and the IBM Tape Virtualization solution that support tape encryption in Open Systems. We discuss the characteristics of each product and how it supports tape encryption.

The following products are covered:

- IBM System Storage TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives
- IBM Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium 4 and 5 Tape Drives
- ► IBM LTO Tape Libraries:
 - IBM TS2900 Tape Autoloader
 - IBM TS3100 Tape Library Express Model
 - IBM TS3200 Tape Library Express Model
 - IBM TS3310 Tape Library
 - IBM TS3400 Tape Library
- IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library

For more information about tape drives and libraries, see:

- ▶ IBM System Storage Tape Library Guide for Open Systems, SG24-5946
- IBM TS3500 Tape Library with System z Attachment: A Practical Guide to TS1120 Tape Drives and TS3500 Tape Automation, SG24-6789
- IBM System Storage TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives and TS1120 Controller (3592 Models J1A, E05, E06, EU6, J70 and C06) Introduction and Planning Guide, GA32-0555.

3.1 IBM System Storage TS1130 and TS1120 Tape Drive

The IBM System Storage TS1130 Tape Drive (machine type 3592, Model E06) represents the third generation of IBM 3592 Tape Drives. The TS1130 is designed for applications that require high capacity and fast access to data across a wide range of environments.

3.1.1 Tape data encryption support

The IBM TS1130 Tape Drive and IBM TS1120 Tape Drive support encryption of data on a tape cartridge. All IBM TS1130 Tape Drives and IBM T1120 Tape Drives with a serial number of 13-65000 or higher are encryption-capable. For currently installed TS1120 drives with a serial number lower than 13-6500, a chargeable upgrade is available.

The encryption capability is implemented through tape drive hardware, and microcode additions and changes. All 3592 media, including WORM cartridges, can be encrypted. In addition, two applications are designed to support encryption: Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) and Encryption Key Manager (EKM). TKLM uses standard key repositories on supported platforms. TKLM is required on a supported server to interface with the tape drive for encryption in a system-managed encryption or library-managed encryption implementation.

With encryption enabled, the access time to data on the tape drive increases, with the bulk of the time spent in OPEN processing when from the load point. Also, the tape drive unload time increases. This is because of the time necessary to retrieve, read, and write the encryption key.

Note: When attaching to a System z server, the IBM 3592 Tape Controller Model C06 or the IBM 3592 Tape Controller Model J70 is required to support tape data encryption.

Host attachment

In an open systems environment, you can connect different systems to the two Fibre Channel ports and use the drive from each system, but you cannot share a drive between an open systems and a System z environment. A better approach is to connect each port to an independent fabric for redundancy and zone the fabric so both open systems hosts can access both ports. When combined with an IBM device driver, on most platforms this will provide both load balancing and path failover. For more information, see the *IBM TotalStorage® Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide*, GC35-0154, available at the following ftp site:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

Open systems attachment

A TS1130 can attach to IBM System i®, i5, iSeries®, AS/400®, System p®, p5, pSeries®, RS/6000®, RS/6000 SP systems, System z9® and System z servers, System x® and xSeries®, Netfinity®, and non IBM servers, workstations, and personal computers that support Fibre Channel interfaces.

For the latest details about specific hardware, software, and Fibre Channel support for the IBM TS1120 Tape Drive, refer to the following website:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/ts1130/index.html

For the latest information about applications and the levels that support TS1130 Tape Drives, refer to the Independent Software Vendor (ISV) matrixes at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/pdf/compatibility/ts1120_isv_matrix.pdf

For supported host bus adapters, refer to:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/hba/index.wss

For additional information about TS1130, refer to *IBM System Storage TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives and TS1120 Controller Introduction and Planning Guide 3592 Models J1A, E05, E06, EU6, J70 and C06,* GA32-0555.

3.1.2 IBM TotalStorage 3592 Model J70 Tape Controller

The Model J70 controller is the predecessor of the TS1120 Model C06. It has been withdrawn from marketing, but existing installations can upgrade the microcode level of the J70 to support tape data encryption when encryption-enabled TS1120 Tape Drives are attached. See Figure 3-1.

The 3592 Model J70 controller supports TS1130, TS1120, and 3592-J1A drives in a TS3500 library.

To use tape encryption, all tape drives behind the J70 must be TS1130 Model E06, TS1130 Model E06, or TS1120 Model E05 drives; in the system-managed (SMStape) environment, intermixing encryption-enabled and non-encryption-enabled TS1120 Model E05 drives is not supported behind the same tape controller.



Figure 3-1 IBM 3592 Model J70 Tape Controller

3.2 IBM LTO Ultrium tape drives and libraries

In this section, we provide an overview of LTO Ultrium tape drive and media technology and describe IBM LTO Ultrium tape drives and automated tape libraries. We describe the following products:

- ► IBM System Storage TS2240 and TS2250 Tape Drive Express Model
- ► IBM System Storage TS2340 and TS2350 Tape Drive Express Model
- ► IBM System Storage TS1040 and TS1050 Tape Drive
- IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader
- IBM System Storage TS3100 Tape Library
- IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library
- IBM System Storage TS3310 Tape Library

The System Storage TS3500 Tape Library also supports IBM LTO Ultrium tape drives, but it is not exclusively an LTO tape library. It supports the installation of IBM LTO Ultrium, IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drives, and IBM System Storage TS1130 Tape Drives. Using IBM TS1120 or IBM TS1130 Tape Drives, the TS3500 attaches not only to open systems, but also to System z hosts. We discuss the TS3500 Tape Library in a separate section (3.4, "IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library" on page 57).

3.2.1 LTO overview

The LTO Program was formed in 1997 by IBM, Hewlett-Packard (HP), and Seagate. The three companies, HP, IBM, and Quantum (the successor to Seagate), jointly oversee the development and road map of Linear Tape-Open (LTO) technology.

The LTO technology objective was to establish new open-format specifications for high capacity, high performance tape storage products for use in the midrange and network server computing environments and to enable superior tape product options.

LTO program cooperation goes beyond the initial three companies. LTO format specifications have been made available to all who want to participate through standard licensing provisions. LTO program technology has attracted a number of other industry leaders, so that LTO-specified products (tape drives and tape storage cartridges) will reach the market from multiple manufacturers, not just the technology provider companies. This is critical to meeting an open market objective and is accomplished through open licensing of the technology.

Cooperation is also evident in the LTO program requirement that all products produced by licensees are technically certified annually. The primary objective of this certification is to help determine whether LTO format cartridges will be interchangeable across drives produced by different LTO Ultrium manufacturers. In other words, LTO-compliant media from any vendor can be read and written in LTO-compliant drives from any vendor.

All three consortium members (IBM, HP, and Quantum) are shipping LTO Ultrium products, and numerous other licensees are shipping hardware and media.

The Linear Tape-Open organization website is:

http://www.lto.org

For more information about LTO technology, refer to the *IBM System Storage Tape Libraries Guide for Open Systems*, SG24-5946.

The IBM LTO website is:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/lto

The LTO Ultrium road map (Figure 3-2 on page 43) shows the evolution of LTO technology. At the time of writing, IBM Ultrium generation 4 and 5 products are offered. The information in the road map is given as an indication of future developments by the three consortium members and is subject to change.

	Generation 1	Generation 2	Generation 3	Generation 4	Generation 5	Generation 6
Capacity (Native)	100 GB	200 GB	400 GB	800 GB	1.6 TB	3.2 TB
Transfer Rate (Native)	Up to 20 MB/s	Up to 40 MB/s	Up to 80 MB/s	Up to 120 MB/s	Up to 180 MB/s	Up to 270 MB/s
WORM	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Encryption	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Figure 3-2 LTO Ultrium road map

Important: Hewlett-Packard, IBM, and Quantum reserve the right to change the information in this migration path without notice.

3.2.2 LTO media

Each generation of LTO Ultrium tape drives uses its own cartridge. LTO drives generally provide backward read compatibility for the previous generations and read/write compatibility for the previous generation. For example, LTO4 drives can read and write in LTO3 format on LTO3 media. They can also read the LTO2 format from LTO2 media, but cannot write in LTO2 format. See Table 3-1 for a quick reference.

	IBM LTO Ultri	um Data Cartric	lges		
IBM Ultrium Tape Drive	1500 GB (Ultrium 5)	800 GB (Ultrium 4)	400 GB (Ultrium 3)	200GB (Ultrium 2)	100GB (Ultrium 1)
Ultrium 5	Read/Write	Read/Write	Read only		
Ultrium 4		Read/Write	Read/Write	Read only	
Ultrium 3			Read/Write	Read/Write	Read only
Ultrium 2				Read/Write	Read/Write
Ultrium 1					Read/Write

Table 3-1 Ultrium data cartridge compatibility with Ultrium tape drive

The generations include:

- LTO1 was the first generation of the LTO technology, with an uncompressed tape capacity of 100 GB per cartridge.
- LTO2 is the second generation of the LTO technology, with an uncompressed tape capacity of 200 GB per cartridge.
- LTO3 is the third generation of the LTO technology, with an uncompressed tape capacity of 400 GB per cartridge. A WORM (write-once, read-many) version of the LTO3 cartridge is also available.
- LTO4 is the fourth generation of the LTO technology, with an uncompressed tape capacity of 800 GB per cartridge. A WORM (write-once, read-many) version of the LTO4 cartridge is also available. LTO4 is the first LTO generation that supports encryption. Encryption on LTO drives requires the use of LTO4 media.
- LTO5 is the fifth generation of the LTO technology, with an uncompressed tape capacity of 1500 GB per cartridge. A WORM (write-once, read-many) version of the LTO5 cartridge is also available. LTO5 is the second LTO generation that supports encryption. Encryption on LTO drives requires the use of LTO5 media.

LTO cartridges are color-coded. The LTO Ultrium 1 data cartridge is black, the LTO Ultrium 2 data cartridge is purple, the LTO Ultrium 3 data cartridge is steel blue, the LTO Ultrium 4 data cartridge is green, and the LTO Ultrium 5 data cartridge is burgundy. The third generation IBM WORM cartridge is a two-tone cartridge with a steel-blue top and a platinum (silver) bottom, the fourth generation WORM is a two-tone cartridge with a steel-green top and a platinum (silver) bottom and the fifth generation WORM is a two-tone cartridge with a steel-green top and a platinum (silver) bottom.

See Figure 3-3 for a quick view of LTO cartridge compatibility.

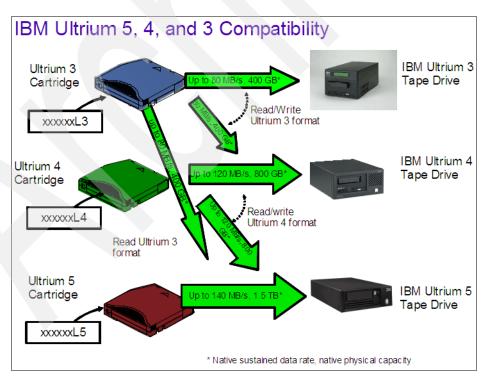


Figure 3-3 IBM Ultrium 3, 4, and 5 cartridge compatibility

WORM tape format

Beginning with LTO3, Write Once Read Many (WORM) functionality provides for non-erasable, non-rewritable operation with tape media and is designed for long-term tamper resistant record retention.

The IBM LTO3 specification for WORM includes the use of low-level encoding in the Cartridge Memory (CM), which is also mastered into the servo pattern as part of the manufacturing process. This encoding is designed to prevent tampering.

Data can be appended at the end of a WORM cartridge to which data was previously written, allowing the full use of the high capacity tape media.

LTO3 WORM cartridges can be used with any LTO3 tape drive with the appropriate microcode and firmware. LTO3 non-WORM and WORM cartridges can coexist in the same library.

The same description holds for the LTO4 and LTO5 WORM cartridges. They can be used by any LTO4 and LTO5 Tape Drive and can coexist with non-WORM cartridges. Additionally, the LTO4 drive can read and write WORM and non-WORM LTO3 cartridges, and the LTO5 drive can read and write WORM and non-WORM LTO4 cartridges.

Figure 3-4 shows IBM LTO3 and LTO4 media. The two-tone cartridges in the picture are LTO3 WORM media.



Figure 3-4 IBM LTO Ultrium 3 and IBM LTO Ultrium 4 media

Labels

The LTO cartridge label uses the barcode symbology of USS-39. A description and definition is available from the Automatic Identification Manufacturers (AIM) specification Uniform Symbol Specification (USS-39) and the ANSI MH10.8M-1993 ANSI Barcode specification.

The barcode string consists of a start character, eight alphanumeric characters, and the stop character. Quiet zones precede and follow the start and stop characters. The first six characters can be any combination of uppercase A-Z or 0-9 (for example, ABC123) to identify the cartridge volume. The last two characters are determined by the LTO cartridge media type (that is, "L" for LTO and "1" for tape cartridge generation or drive manufacturer unique identifier).

Note: No characters other than uppercase alpha A-Z or numeric 0-9 are allowed.

Human-readable characters are allowed provided that there is no conflict or interference with the automation code. Users can specify the format, colors, and location of the human-readable characters.

For optimal library performance make sure your labels adhere to the guidelines found in *Label Specification for IBM 3592 Cartridges when used in IBM Libraries*, located at:

http://www.storage.ibm.com/media/tapecartridges/index.html

Under Enterprise storage media, select 3592 tape cartridges. Under Related information, select Barcode Label Specification for use with 3592 Tape Media. Under Content, select the .pdf file to access the document. You can also contact your IBM Marketing Representative for this specification.

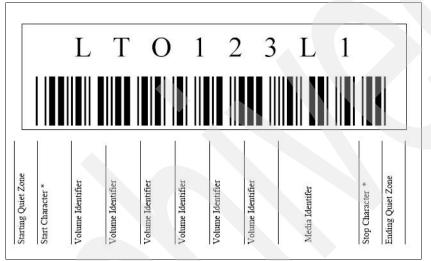


Figure 3-5 shows a barcode label for an LTO1 data cartridge.

Figure 3-5 LTO Ultrium 1 barcode label

3.2.3 IBM System Storage TS2240 Tape Drive Express Model

The IBM TS2240 Tape Drive is an external stand-alone or rack-mountable half high LTO4 drive. It is the entry point for the family of IBM LTO tape products and incorporates the latest generation of LTO technology. The TS2240 is suited to handle the backup, save and restore, and archival data storage needs of a wide range of small systems. See Figure 3-6 on page 47.

IBM TS2240 increases the native data rate to up to 120 MBps. With the use of the LTO4 data cartridge, it doubles the tape cartridge capacity to 800 GB uncompressed capacity (1600 GB with 2:1 compression).

The IBM TS2240 Tape Drive uses a 3 Gbps Serial-Attached SCSI (SAS) interface for connections to a wide spectrum of Open Systems servers. The TS2240 models attach to IBM System p, IBM System i, IBM System x, Microsoft Windows, HP-UX, Sun Solaris, UNIX®, and Linux servers.

The TS2240 is encryption capable and supports application-managed encryption on AIX, Windows Server 2003, Linux, and Solaris. Encryption requires the latest device drivers, which are available on the FTP download site:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

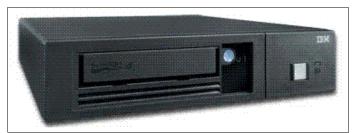


Figure 3-6 IBM System Storage TS2240 Tape Drive Express Model

For more information about the IBM TS2240 Tape Drive, see *IBM System Storage Tape Library Guide for Open Systems*, SG24-5946.

3.2.4 IBM System Storage TS2250 Tape Drive Express model

The IBM System Storage TS2250 Tape Drive Express model, the entry level of the IBM System Storage tape product family, is the answer to growing storage requirements. Incorporating the latest generation of the industry-leading Linear Tape-Open (LTO) technology, the TS2250 Tape Drive is suited for handling backup, save and restore, and archival data storage needs with higher capacity and higher data transfer rate than previous generation. In addition, the IBM Ultrium 5 technology is designed to support media partitioning, and the new IBM Long Term File System technology. It also continues to support encryption of data and WORM media.



Figure 3-7 IBM System Storage TS2250 Tape Drive Express model

The TS2250 provides a physical storage capacity of up to 3.0TB (with 2:1 compression) in conjunction with the new IBM Ultrium 1.5TB data cartridge, nearly double the capacity of previous Ultrium 4 cartridges. The data transfer performance of the TS2250 Tape Drive has increased over the previous LTO half height generation with a transfer rate of up to 140MBps with 6 Gbps SAS interface connectivity. It also now offers two SAS and one Ethernet port per drive to improve availability.

The IBM Ultrium 5 technology is also designed to support encryption of data. The hardware encryption and decryption core and control core resides in the IBM Ultrium 5 tape drive. In addition to reading and writing to Ultrium 5 tape cartridges, the TS2250 can read and write to Ultrium 4 cartridges and read Ultrium 3 cartridges.

For more details, see:

ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/common/ssi/pm/sp/n/tsd03092usen/TSD03092USEN.PDF

3.2.5 IBM System Storage TS2350 Tape Drive

The IBM System Storage TS2350 Tape Drive Express (3580 Model S53, Figure 3-8) is an external stand alone or rack mountable shelf unit that provides high capacity and performance for the midrange systems environment. The TS2350 incorporates the Linear Tape-Open (LTO) IBM System Storage Ultrium 5 Full-High Tape Drive, which provides maximum tape drive throughput native data rate performance of up to 140 MBps compared to the IBM TS2240 LTO Full-High Tape Drive (Ultrium 4) at up to 120 MBps native data transfer rate. In addition, with the use of the new IBM LTO Ultrium 5 1.5 TB Data Cartridge, the IBM TS2350 Ultrium 5 Tape Drive provides double tape cartridge capacity with up to 1.5 TB native physical capacity (3.0 TB with 2:1 compression) compared to previous Ultrium 4 800 GB (1.6 TB with 2:1 compression) Tape Cartridges. IBM Ultrium 5 Tape Drives can read and write LTO Ultrium 4 data cartridges, and can read LTO Ultrium 3 data cartridges. The TS2350 Tape Drive supports WORM (Write Once Read Many) on WORM cartridge types.

The TS2350 *Tape Drive Model S53* uses 6 Gbps Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) interfaces for connecting to open systems servers. The TS2350 Model S53 has dual-port SFF-8088 interfaces for connecting to open systems servers.

The TS2350 Tape Drive Model S53 is encryption-capable and supports application-managed encryption (AME). The TS2350 Tape Drive can use the T10 encryption method. Encryption is only supported on LTO Ultrium 4 and Ultrium 5 Data Cartridge.

The TS2350 is a client-replaceable unit (CRU). If a TS2350 fails, IBM provides you a replacement part.

For error codes and messages, there is a Single Character Display (SCD) at the front of the TS2350 Tape Drive.



Figure 3-8 IBM System Storage TS2350 Tape Drive

3.2.6 IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader

The IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader (Machine Type 3572, Figure 3-9 on page 49) provides compact, high capacity, low-cost solutions for simple unattended data backup. The library has a compact 1U form factor with easy access to tape cartridges via a removable magazine. The IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader is an external stand-alone or rack-mountable unit that incorporates an IBM Ultrium 3 or Ultrium 4 Half-High Tape Drive. It is equipped with a Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) host adapter attachment that has a data transfer rate of up to 3 Gbps.

The IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader has a removable cartridge magazine with nine data cartridge slots, including a configurable two slot I/O station. IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader is an entry point for IBM Linear Tape-Open (LTO) tape automation. This autoloader uses the IBM patented high density (HD) slot technology.

Standard features include:

- ► Application-managed encryption (AME) with LTO4
- Barcode reader
- LCD display for local management
- ► Web-guided user interface for remote management
- Configurable I/O station
- Removable magazine with IBM patented HD Slot technology

Optional features include:

- Transparent system-managed encryption (SME) and library-managed encryption (LME)
- Choice of rack mount or desktop packaging

For the remainder of this chapter, we use the terms TS2900 or TS2900 Tape Autoloader as abbreviations for the IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader.



Figure 3-9 IBM System Storage TS2900 Tape Autoloader

Encryption settings

The TS2900 supports application-managed encryption by default when an LTO4 or LTO5 drive is installed. An additional feature, Transparent LTO Encryption, is required for system-managed encryption or library-managed encryption. The encryption settings are shown in Figure 3-10.

IBM System Storage™ TS	2900 Tape Autoloader		IBM.
Welcome admin (SSL Enabled)			Help Logoff
🖃 Monitor System	Encryption		
System Summary	Refresh		
Library Map Manage Library	Refresh		
Move Cartridges Unload Drive	Feature Activation Key	Encryption is currently licensed.	
Clean Drive Library State	Encryption Settings		
Inventory	Encryption method:	Library Managed 🗸	
Configure Library	Encryption policy:	Encrypt All (default)	
User Access			
Physical Logical	Security	_	
Network	SSL:	Enable SSL for EKM	
Encryption	Primary EKM Server Settings		
Date and Time	Address:	9.11.221.242	
Notifications Save / Restore	TCP port number:	3801	
Service Library	SSL port number:	443	
Key Path Diagnostics	Secondary EKM Server Settings		
Operator Interventions	Address:	0.0.0.0	
View Library Logs Traces			
Download Drive Logs	TCP port number:	3801	
Download Library Logs	SSL port number:		
Reset Library / Drive Firmware Update	Advanced Encryption Settings (for Engineerin	g Support use only)	
Usage Statistics	Advanced encryption method:	No Advanced Setting (default)	
	Advanced encryption policy:	No Advanced Setting (default) 🔫	
	Encryption density:	No Advanced Setting (default) 🚽	
	Encryption key path:	No Advanced Setting (default)	
Display Refresh Interval (sec)			
T. T	Submit		
0 10 20 30 40 50 60			

Figure 3-10 IBM TS2900 Tape Autoloader encryption settings

3.2.7 IBM System Storage TS3100 Tape Library

The TS3100 Tape Library (Machine Type 3573, Model L2U) is a single or dual drive, entry level desktop or rack-mounted unit (requiring two rack units of an industry standard 19-inch rack) that can operate in random or sequential mode. The robotics inside the library move the cartridges to and from the tape drive, which permits unattended backup. Two removable magazines can store a total of 24 cartridges. A single dedicated mail slot (I/O station) is available for importing and exporting cartridges.

The TS3100 now incorporates the new IBM Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium 5 Half-High and Full High 6-Gb SAS and 8-Gb Fibre Channel Drives, enhancing tape performance over the previous generation IBM LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drives, with a native data transfer rate of up to 140 MBps. Mixed Ultrium generations and attachment Tape Drive types are supported where drive space is available.

The following IBM Ultrium Tape Drives are available for the TS3100 Tape Library:

- ► Ultrium 5 Full-High 6 Gbps Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
- Ultrium 5 Full-High 8 Gbps Fibre Channel (FC)
- Ultrium 5 Half-High 6 Gbps Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
- ► Ultrium 5 Half-High 8 Gbps Fibre Channel
- Ultrium 4 Full-High Low Voltage Differential (LVD) SCSI
- Ultrium 4 Full-High Fibre Channel (FC)
- Ultrium 4 Full-High 3 Gbps SAS
- Ultrium 4 Half-High 3 Gbps SAS
- The IBM Ultrium 3 Half-High 3 Gbps SAS

Up to two IBM Ultrium 3, Ultrium 4, and Ultrium 5 Half-High Tape Drives or one IBM Ultrium 3, Ultrium 4, and Ultrium 5 Full-High Tape Drive can be installed in the TS3100 Tape Library.

Tape encryption is supported on the IBM Ultrium LTO4 and LTO5 Tape Drive with the SAS and Fibre Channel interface. The TS3100 supports application-managed encryption, system-managed encryption, and library-managed encryption. Refer to Feature code 5900, Transparent LTO Encryption.

The LTO Ultrium 5 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drives support host application-managed encryption and system-managed encryption, using T10 encryption methods, for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only. Data encryption is supported with LTO Ultrium 4 and LTO Ultrium 5 Data Cartridges only. Encryption is also supported for library firmware Version 4.0 and later and drive firmware level 74H4 or later.

Note: For LTO Ultrium 5, the IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager v1.0 or later is required to enable system-managed and library-managed encryption.

The encryption-enabled drive contains the necessary hardware and firmware to encrypt and decrypt host tape application data. The encryption policy and encryption keys are provided by the host application or host server. A drive digital certificate is installed at manufacturing time. Each drive receives a unique serial number and certificate. The T10 application can validate each drive instance by checking the drive's digital certificate. AME is supported on AIX, Windows 2000 Server, Linux, and Solaris. Encryption requires the latest device drivers available on the ftp download site:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

The LTO Ultrium 5 and Ultrium 4 encryption environment can be complex and requires knowledge beyond that of a product-trained IBM service support representative (SSR). In the Tape Storage environment, the encryption function on tape drives (desktop, stand-alone, and

within libraries) is configured and managed by the client. In certain instances, SSRs will be required to enable encryption at a hardware level when service access or service password-controlled access is necessary.

The installation of an IBM Ultrium 5 Tape Drive with encryption might require code updates for System p and supported open systems device drivers or storage management software. For details on supported software versions and release levels for the Ultrium 5 Tape Drive, as well as hardware support information, refer to the following website:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/tape

Tape Encryption is available at no charge for AME. Feature Code (FC) 1604 (for the TS3500 Tape Library) or FC5900 (for all other tape libraries) and FC9900 must be ordered when you are planning to work with SME.

Note: The optional Transparent Encryption Key feature enabling SME and LME is not available on a TS3100 model purchased through High Volume channels.



Figure 3-11 IBM System Storage TS3100 Tape Library Express model

For more information about the IBM TS3100 Tape Library, refer to *IBM System Storage Tape Libraries Guide for Open Systems*, SG24-5946.

3.2.8 IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library

The IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library (Machine Type 3573 Model L4U) is a midrange level desktop or rack-mounted unit (requiring four rack units of an industry standard 19-inch rack). The IBM TS3200 Tape Library operates in random or sequential mode. You can partition the IBM TS3200 Tape Library into a maximum of four logical libraries when four drives are installed. A mixture of a SCSI drive, a Fibre Channel drive (Full-High only) and a Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) drive is supported when the IBM TS3200 Tape Library is partitioned (but not within the same logical library).

The TS3200 incorporates the new IBM Linear Tape-Open (LTO) Ultrium 5 Half-High and Full High 6-Gbps SAS and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Drives, enhancing tape performance over the previous generation IBM LTO Ultrium 4 Tape Drives, with a native data transfer rate of up to 140 MBps Mixed Ultrium generations and attachment Tape Drive types are supported where drive space is available.

The IBM TS3200 Tape Library supports both data path and control path failover when you install Feature Code 1682. The robotics inside the library move the cartridges to and from the drives so unattended backups can take place. The four standard removable magazines can store a total of 48 cartridges. The IBM TS3200 Tape Library comes with three I/O slots for importing and exporting cartridges.

The following IBM Ultrium Tape Drives are available for the TS3200 Tape Library:

- Ultrium 5 Full-High 6 Gbps Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
- Ultrium 5 Full-High 8 Gbps Fibre Channel (FC)

- Ultrium 5 Half-High 6 Gbps Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
- ► Ultrium 5 Half-High 8 Gbps Fibre Channel
- Ultrium 4 Full-High Low Voltage Differential (LVD) SCSI
- Ultrium 4 Full-High Fibre Channel (FC)
- Ultrium 4 Full-High 3 Gbps SAS
- ► Ultrium 4 Half-High 3 Gbps SAS
- ► The IBM Ultrium 3 Half-High 3 Gbps SAS

Up to four IBM Ultrium 3, Ultrium 4, and Ultrium 5 Half-High Tape Drives or two IBM Ultrium 4 or Ultrium 5 Full-High Tape Drives can be installed in the TS3200 Tape Library. Refer to Feature Code 5900, Transparent LTO Encryption, for SME and LME support.

Application-managed encryption, library-managed encryption, and system-managed encryption are supported on the IBM Ultrium LTO4 and LTO5 Tape Drives with the SAS and Fibre Channel interface.

Note: IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) V1 or later is required for encryption key management with an LTO Ultrium 5 Tape Drive.

Standard features are a barcode reader and a remote management unit (RMU).



Figure 3-12 IBM System Storage TS3200 Tape Library Express model

The LTO Ultrium 5 and Ultrium 4 Tape Drive supports host application-managed encryption using the T10 encryption method, and system-managed encryption for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only. Tape Encryption is supported with LTO Ultrium 4 and Ultrium 5 Data Cartridges only. Encryption is also supported for library firmware Version 1.95 and later.

Note: For LTO Ultrium 5, the IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager v1.0 or later is required to enable SME and LME.

The encryption-enabled drive contains the necessary hardware and firmware to encrypt and decrypt host tape application data. Encryption policy and encryption keys are provided by the host application or host server. A drive digital certificate is installed at manufacturing time. Encryption requires the latest device drivers, which are available on the ftp download site:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

The LTO Ultrium 5 and Ultrium 4 encryption environment can be complex and requires knowledge beyond that of a product-trained IBM service support representative (SSR). In the Tape Storage environment, the encryption function on tape drives (desktop, stand-alone, and within libraries) is configured and managed by the client. In certain instances, IBM SSRs will be required to enable encryption at a hardware level when service access or service password-controlled access is required.

The installation of an IBM Ultrium 5 Tape Drive with encryption might require code updates for System p and supported open systems device drivers or storage management software. For details on supported software versions and release levels for the Ultrium 5 Tape Drive, as well as hardware support information, refer to the following website:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/tape

Tape encryption is available at no charge for AME. Feature Codes 5900 and 9900 must be ordered when you are planning to work with SME.

Note: The optional Transparent Encryption Key feature enabling system-managed and library-managed encryption is not available on a TS3200 model purchased through High Volume channels.

For more information about the IBM TS3200 Tape Library, refer to the *IBM System Storage Tape Libraries Guide for Open Systems*, SG24-5946.

3.2.9 IBM System Storage TS3310 Tape Library

The TS3310 Tape Library is a highly expandable Ultrium LTO library that allows you to start small with a 5U base unit (Model L5B), available in desktop or rack-mounted configurations, which contains the library control module, fixed tape cartridge storage of 35 slots, a configurable I/O station of 6 slots, a touchscreen display, cartridge-handling robotics, and up to two LTO Ultrium 5, Ultrium 4, or Ultrium 3 Tape Drives.

Over time, as your need for tape backup increases, you can add additional 9U Model E9U expansion modules. Each E9U expansion module can accommodate up to four LTO Ultrium 5, Ultrium 4, or Ultrium 3 Tape Drives, additional storage slots, a configurable I/O station of 12 slots, and a redundant power supply. The entire system grows vertically. Currently available configurations include the 5U base library module, alone or with up to four 9U modules.

The TS3310 Tape Library offers a broad range of configuration possibilities. The smallest configuration includes a base unit with one to two LTO3, LTO4, or LTO5 tape drives, 52.5 TB of native tape storage (35 slots), and 6 I/O slots. This configuration will be upgradeable to a fully configured rack-mounted library 41U high with up to 18 LTO3, LTO4, or LTO5 tape drives with over 603 TB of native tape storage and up to 54 I/O slots.

The new Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) IBM Ultrium Tape Drive is also supported in the TS3310.

The IBM Ultrium LTO5 and LTO4 Fibre Channel and the LTO4 Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) tape drives available in the TS3310 configuration are encryption-capable and support application-managed, system-managed, and library-managed encryption.

The TS3310 library supports host application-managed, system-managed, and library-managed encryption for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only. Data encryption is supported with LTO Ultrium 5 and Ultrium 4 Data Cartridges only.

The installation of an IBM Ultrium 5 Tape Drive with encryption might require code updates for System p and supported open systems device drivers or storage management software. For details about supported software versions and release levels for the Ultrium 5 Tape Drive, as well as hardware support information, refer to the following website:

http://www.ibm.com/storage/tape

Application-managed encryption is available at no charge, and at the time of this writing, Tivoli Storage Manager was the only application that supports AME.

Note: For LTO Ultrium 5, the IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager v1.0 or later is required to enable system-managed and library-managed encryption.

System-managed encryption and library-managed encryption both need FC5900 and FC9900. FC5900 is a Transparent LTO Encryption feature, which provides a license key to enable SME and LME. FC9900 is a feature that must be ordered when encryption will be used in the TS3310. It includes publication updates with information about enabling and configuring the TS3310 to support Encryption. This feature also provides the Encryption Key Manager (EKM) publications.

Before setting up Tape Encryption on the TS3310, you must already have installed your EKM on a server in your network. An EKM is needed when SME or LME will be configured.

Encryption can be set up for each logical library. To configure encryption, log into the TS3310 using the web user interface. Select **Manage Library** \rightarrow **Logical Library**, select the logical library that you want to modify, and click **Go**. After selecting the logical library in the pull-down menu, select **Modify Encryption Method**, select your preferred method, and click **OK**. Figure 3-13 and Figure 3-14 show the types of encryption methods that you can select.

Welcome										негр	Logou
Velcome Page	Logical	Libraries	;								
Monitor System											
Manage Cartridges	Refres	h Last re	efresh: Tueso	day, May 18, 20	10 1	3:14:11 P	DT				
Manage Drives											
Manage Library		6		a bina a table a d		6.					
Perform Inventory Setup Wizard			Modify Encry	ption Method		GO					
Logical Libraries	Select	Name	Media Type	Storage Slots		tridges in rage	Drives	Cartridges in Drives	Encryption Method	Emulation Mode	Statu
Cleaning Slots I/O Station Slots	< □	library_a	LTO	15	4		1	0	N/A	TS3310	Offline
€ Settings Manage Access Service Library		library_b	LTO	15	2		1	0	Library Managed Encryption	TS3310	Offline
			Total: 2					Se	elected: 1		

Figure 3-13 TS3310 Logical Library Encryption

come		Help		
ome Page nitor System nage Cartridges	Modify Encryption Method			
anage Drives	Logical Library library_b Encryption Settings			
 Manage Library Perform Inventory Setup Wizard Logical Libraries Cleaning Slots I/O Station Slots I/O Station Slots Settings Manage Access Service Library 	Encryption method:	Application Managed Encryption		
	Encryption policy:	None (default) Application Managed Encryption		
	Advanced Encryption Settings (for Engineering Support use only)	System Managed Encryption		
	Advanced encryption method:	Library Managed Encryption No Advanced Setting (default)		
	Advanced encryption policy:	No Advanced Setting (default)		
	Encryption density:	No Advanced Setting (default)		
	Encryption key path:	No Advanced Setting (default)		
	Encryption Key Management Server Settings			
	*Primary IP address (IPv4):	9.11.198.250		
	*Primary TCP port number:	3801		
	Secondary IP address (IPv4):	9.11.198.249		
	Secondary TCP port number:			
	Enable SSL for Encryption			

Figure 3-14 Modify Encryption Method

Valid methods for the TS3310 Encryption are Application Managed Encryption (AME), System Managed Encryption (SME), and Library Managed Encryption (LME); SME and LME require an additional license key.

Note: If you do not have an installed encryption license key, you will not be able to choose SME or LME methods. If you attempt to choose either of these methods without an installed encryption key, an error message displays and the encryption method defaults to None.

The Logical Library library Encryption Settings field includes two settings:

- Encryption method:
 - None: No encryption is used.
 - Application-managed encryption: Encryption in operating environments that run an application capable of generating and managing encryption policies and keys. If you select application-managed encryption, no further configuration steps are necessary.
 AME is standard for all Ultrium 4 and Ultrium 5 drives in this library. At the time of this writing, only Tivoli Storage Manager is capable of application-managed encryption.
 - System-managed encryption: Encryption in operating environments where no application is capable of key management runs, and encryption is set up implicitly through each instance of the IBM device driver.
 - Library-managed encryption: Transparent encryption by the TS3310 Tape Library tape drive.
- The Encryption Policy pull-down menu is only visible when Library Managed Encryption is selected. The available options are:
 - Encrypt All
 - Internal Label Selective Encryption
 - Internal Label Encrypt All

The **Advanced Encryption Settings** fields are for Engineering Support use only. These settings are for use only by IBM support personnel, and only under the direction of the drive development team. Their use is limited to solving unforeseen problem or to support a unique configuration. These options are not intended for use by the client without the guidance of IBM support.

The Encryption Key Management Server Settings field includes the following options:

- Primary IP address (IPv4): The primary internet protocol address of the encryption server
- Primary TCP port number: The primary port for the encryption server
- Secondary IP address (IPv4): The secondary internet protocol address of the encryption server
- Secondary TCP port number: The secondary port for the encryption server
- Enable SSL for Encryption: Select this check box if you want to allow the security feature SSL when using the web user interface.

For more detailed information about how to set up encryption on the TS3310, refer to *IBM System Storage TS3310 Tape Library Setup and Operator Guide*, GA32-0477.

Encryption requires the latest device drivers, which are available on the ftp download website:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

3.3 IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library

The IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library (Machine type 3577, Model 5LU, shown in Figure 3-15 on page 57) is designed to offer high performance drive technology and automation for the open systems environment. The IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library is a five unit (5U) external desktop or rack-mountable tape library that incorporates up to two IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drives or the new Generation 3 TS1130 (3592-E06) Tape Drives. To support the TS1130 Tape Drives, the new library firmware Release 3 or later is required.

The IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drive has a native capacity of 700 GB when using the IBM Extended Data Cartridge (JB), or 500 GB when using the IBM Data Cartridge (JA). The IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drive has a native rate of up to 100 MBps. The IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drive has a dual-ported switched fabric 4 Gbps Fibre Channel attachment. The tape drives must be ordered separately with the final order.

The IBM System Storage TS1130 Tape Drive has a native capacity of 1000 GB (1.0 TB) when using the IBM 3592 Extended Data Cartridge (JB), or 640 GB when using the IBM 3592 Enterprise Cartridge (JA). The TS1130 Tape Drive has a native data rate of up to 160 MBps. The IBM TS1130 Tape Drive has a dual-ported switched fabric 4 Gbps Fibre Channel attachment.

The IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library supports the IBM TS1120 and the TS1130 built-in encryption capabilities. The supported encryption methods are application-managed, system-managed, and library-managed encryption.

The IBM System Storage 3592-J1A Tape Drive is not supported in the IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library.



Figure 3-15 IBM System Storage TS3400 Tape Library

Data encryption

The 3592 Model E tape drives include data encryption capabilities within the drive itself. This capability provides clients with a greater ability to protect information if tape cartridges are lost or stolen by supporting the storage of the data in an encrypted form. The IBM Encryption Key Manager (EKM) or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) components for the Java platform can help generate and manage encryption keys for 3592 Model E tape drives. This feature uses standard key repositories on supported platforms and supports three encryption management methods: application-managed, system-managed, and library-managed encryption.

3.4 IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library

The IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library leverages the LTO and Enterprise 3592 drive technologies within the same library. The TS3500 was previously known as the IBM TotalStorage 3584 Tape Library and still has the machine type 3584.

The TS3500 Tape Library provides tape storage solutions to meet the need for large, unattended storage capabilities in midrange to enterprise environments (z/OS and Open Systems). This chapter only covers information relating to the TS3500 Tape Library attachment in an open systems environment. For information about TS3500 Tape Library attachment to a System z environment, refer to *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library with System z Attachment: A Practical Guide to Enterprise Tape Drives and TS3500 Tape Automation*, SG24-6789.

Combining reliable, automated tape handling and storage with reliable, high-performance IBM LTO Ultrium tape and 3592 drives, the TS3500 Tape Library offers outstanding retrieval performance with typical cartridge move times of less than three seconds.

The TS3500 Tape Library can be partitioned into multiple logical libraries. This makes it an excellent choice for consolidating tape workloads from multiple heterogeneous open systems servers and enables the support for System z attachment in the same library.

In addition, the TS3500 Tape Library provides outstanding reliability and redundancy, through the provision of redundant power supplies in each frame, an optional second cartridge accessor, control and data path failover, and dual grippers within each cartridge accessor. Both library and drive firmware can now be upgraded non-disruptively, that is, without interrupting the normal operations of the library.

The TS3500 supports tape encryption on the following tape drives: IBM System Storage TS1040 Tape Drive, TS1050 (3588-F5A) Tape Drive, and IBM 3592 models E Tape Drive. IBM 3592 models E Tape Drive includes TS1130 and TS1120. All three encryption methods are supported: application-managed, system-managed, and library-managed encryption.

3.4.1 Tape encryption overview

The 3592 Model E tape drives, the TS1040 Tape Drive and TS1050 Tape Drives, support tape encryption with all three encryption methods. You can encrypt all 3592 data cartridges including the WORM and the extended data cartridges when you are using the 3592 Model E tape drives. For encryption on the TS1040 Tape Drive and TS1050 Tape Drive, you must use Ultrium 4 and Ultrium 5 data cartridges or WORM 4 and WORM 5 cartridges.

The TS3500 supports the following three encryption methods:

Application-managed encryption

The application controls the encryption process and generates and provides the encryption keys to the tape drives, for example, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager.

Library-managed encryption

The tape library controls the encryption process through the library interface. An external Encryption Key Manager (EKM) is needed for this method of encryption and is available for AIX, i5/OS, Linux, HP-UX, Sun Solaris, and Windows. The tape drive communicates with the EKM through the library interface using TCP/IP.

System-managed encryption

The encryption process is set up implicitly through each instance of the IBM device driver.

Encryption is available at no charge for the 3592 Model E tape drives for all encryption methods. The TS1040 and TS1050 Tape Drives support application-managed encryption (AME) at no charge. However, we recommend that you order FC9900 for AME as well.

Feature Code 1604 and FC9900 must be ordered when you are planning to implement library-managed encryption (LME) or system-managed encryption (SME) with the TS3500.

Configuring and managing encryption is a client responsibility and not the responsibility of the IBM SSR. In certain instances, SSRs will be required to enable encryption at a hardware level when service access or service password-controlled access is required.

You can set up as many as four key manager TCP/IP addresses when LME is used as an encryption method.

Setting up encryption

Setting up or changing the encryption can only be done using the web user interface, not using the operator panel. Before you start configuring your encryption on the TS3500, the EKM must already be installed. The IBM EKM is the component that assists the 3592 Model E tape drives and the TS1040 in generating, protecting, storing, and maintaining encryption keys. The EKM R2 must be used when TS1040s are installed in a tape library.

The new IBM Ultrium 5 Fibre Channel tape drives are encryption-capable. IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1 or later is required for encryption key management with LTO Ultrium 5 tape drives. The Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager solution on distributed operating systems includes the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server, an embedded WebSphere Application Server, and DB2.

Basic setup steps

To set up or change the encryption method for each 3592 Model E Tape Drive or TS1040 or TS1050 perform the following steps:

1. Type the Ethernet IP address on the URL line of the browser and press **Enter**. The Welcome page displays (Figure 3-16).

Work Items	System Summary	Help
₽ 	Library Status:	^
Cartridges Data Cartridges	Accessor CK	
Cleaning Cartridges		
I/O Station	LTO Capacity Utilization 🔽 47%	
Cartridge Assignment Policy Barcode Encryption Policy		
Key Label Mapping	View Configuration and Cartridge Counts:	
Insert Notification	All Frames V Inventory/Audit	
E Library		
Logical Libraries Accessor		
Library Preferences		-
ALMS		
Virtual IO Date and Time		
E Drives		
Drive Summary		
Drive Assignment Control Paths	All Frames	
World Wide Names	Total storage slots 219	
Cleaning Mode	LTO Licensed Capacity 219	
Ports	LTO Unlicensed Capacity 0	
E Access	Total empty storage slots 117	
Web Security Operator Panel Security	Offline storage slots 0	
Key Manager Addresses	Accessors 1	
SNMP Settings	Total VO slots 32 Empty VO slots 32	
SNMP Destinations SNMP System Data		
SMI-S Agent	Total LTO data cartridges 100 LTO Ultrium-1 36	
Library IP Addresses	LTO Ultrium-2 45	
Secure Socket Layer	LTO Ultrium-3 11	
Library VPD	LTO Ultrium-4 6 LTO Ultrium 5 0	
Drive VPD	LTO Ultrium-5 0 V LTO Ultrium Not Labeled 2	~

Figure 3-16 TS3500 Web Specialist Welcome page

 Select Library → Logical Libraries. The Manage Logical Libraries window displays (Figure 3-17). For each logical library, the Encryption Method column indicates whether encryption is library-managed, system-managed, application-managed, is assigned no method (None), or is unable to be set (N/A).

rk Items						Manag	e Logical Librai	ries				
tem Summary atridges Data Cartridges Classing Cartridges (Classing Cartridges Classinges Associations Cartridges Assignment Policy Barcods Encryston Policy Key Label Magping Invert Retification Daray Logical Libraries Accessor Library Preferences	m,	Last Refresh: 5/2		11.25.30			-					
ALMS Virtual IO Date and Time	Total Logic	al Libraries: 5		v Go								
Drive Summary Drive Assignment	Select	Logical Library	Туре	# Dedicated	Drives Shared	# Ca Assigned	tridges Max.	# VI Assigned	O Slots Max.	Exports	Encryption Method	Volser
Control Paths World Wide Names		LTO3	LTO	4	0	31	50	14	32	Show	Library-Managed	8
Cleaning Mode		2-05	LTO	3	0	0	50	0	32	Show	None	8
orts		3-08	LTO	2	0	11	50	0	32	Show	System-Managed	8
vess Web Security		LTO5	LTO	1	0	A 57	68	0	32	Show	N/A	8
Operator Panel Security Key Manager Addresses SNMP Settings		5-0C	LTO	1	0	<u>▲</u> 1	10	0	32	Show	N/A	8
SNMP Destinations SNMP System Data												

Figure 3-17 TS3500 Logical Libraries

- 3. To set or change a drive's method of encryption, select the check box of the logical library to which the drive belongs. If you select multiple logical libraries with dissimilar encryption methods, the Encryption Method field displays Mixed, and no changes can be made.
- 4. If ALMS is not enabled, all logical libraries for a given media type must be selected in order for the Modify Encryption Method to be invoked.

5. From the Select Action drop-down box, select **Modify Encryption Method** and click **Go**. The Modify Encryption Method pop-up window displays (Figure 3-18).

tems		Manage Logical Libraries										
n Summary ridges	Refresh	Last Refresh: 5/2	5/2010	11:25:30								
Data Cartridges Cleaning Cartridges I/O Station Cartridge Assignment Policy Barcode Encryption Policy Key Label Napping Insert Notification	:M, ,											
ry Logical Libraries Accessor Library Preferences ALMS Virtual IO E		AD: Library Statistics()	esvi									
Date and Time		Details		✓ Go	1							
s Drive Summary) Drives	# Ca	artridaes	# VI	0 Slots			
Drive Summary Drive Assignment	Select	Logical Library	Туре) Drives Shared	# Ca Assigned	artridges Max.	# VI Assigned	O Slots Max.	Exports	Encryption Method	Volser
Drive Summary Drive Assignment Control Paths			Type LTO	#1						Exports Show	Encryption Method	Volser 8
Drive Summary Drive Assignment Control Paths Norld Wide Names	Select	Logical Library		# I Dedicated	Shared	Assigned	Max.	Assigned	Max.			
Drive Summary Drive Assignment Control Paths World Wide Names Cleaning Mode	Select	Logical Library	LTO	# I Dedicated 4	Shared 0	Assigned 31	Max. 50	Assigned 14	Max. 32	Show	Library-Managed	8
Drive Summary Drive Assignment Sontol Paths World Wide Names Zleaning Mode	Select	Logical Library LTO3 2-05	LTO LTO	# I Dedicated 4 3	Shared 0 0	Assigned 31 0	Max. 50 50	Assigned 14 0	Max. 32 32	Show	Library-Managed	8
Drive Summary Drive Ausignment Control Paths World Wide Names Cleaning Mode Study Security Operator Panel Security Operator Panel Security	Select	LTO3 2-05 3-08	LTO LTO LTO	# I Dedicated 4 3 2	Shared 0 0 0	Assigned 31 0 11	Max. 50 50 50	Assigned 14 0 0	Max. 32 32 32 32	Show Show Show	Library-Managed None System-Managed	8 8 8 8

Figure 3-18 TS3500 Modify Encryption Method window

6. In the Encryption Method field, select the type of encryption that you want.

If you select the system-managed encryption method when using 3592 Model E Tape Drive, the window displays the installed 3592 Model E tape drives and indicates whether they are encryption-capable. Select the encryption-capable drives that you want to become encryption-enabled and select **Apply**. Figure 3-19 on page 61 shows the Modify Encryption Method window with System-Managed selected.

Bncryption Method - Mo	zilla Fire	fox			JX
http://9.11.196.226/US/En_	US-En_US	-02949776516/whtm_change_c	drive_encrypt.ht	m	☆
Encryption Method					^
EKM-H					
Encryption Method S					
		t drives to encrypt			
	Select	t Drive		Encryption Capable	
		30F092511		No	
		30F092512		No	
		30F092513		No	
		30F092514		No	=
		30F092515		No	
		30F092516		No	
		30F092517		No	
		30F092518		No	
		30F092519		No	
		30F09251A		Yes	
		30F09251B		Yes	
		30F09251C		Yes	
Advanced Encryption	Settings	(for Engineering Su	pport use o	nly)	
Advanced Method	No Adv	vanced Setting 💌			
Advanced Policy	No Adv	vanced Setting	~		
Code	No Ad	vanced Setting			>
Done		III			-

Figure 3-19 TS3500 Modify Encryption Method System Managed selection

- 7. If the encryption method is library-managed encryption, the Encryption Policy selections are:
 - Barcode (default)
 - Internal Label-Selective Encryption
 - Internal Label-Encrypt All.

This selection is only used for Symantec Veritas NetBackup.

Note: The default setting of the library-managed encryption method is to encrypt all cartridges in a logical partition.

Advanced Encryption Settings

Advanced Encryption Settings are used only by IBM support personnel (under the direction of the drive development team) to provide a solution to an unforeseen problem or to support a unique configuration. This option is not intended for the client to use without the guidance of IBM support.

Setting up the EKM addresses

The next step is to set one or more EKM addresses. You can create, modify, or delete a key manager address using the Tape Library Specialist web interface, but not using the operator panel. You can test a key manager address using either the web or the operator panel.

To set up the EKM addresses:

- 1. Type the Ethernet IP address on the URL line of the browser and press **Enter**. The Welcome page displays (Figure 3-16 on page 59).
- Select Access → Key Manager Addresses. The Key Manager Addresses window is displayed (Figure 3-21).

B Library B Drives B Ports Access Web Security	Last Refresh: 5/25/2010 13:29:46 er up to 4 Key Manager Addresses for Al es set to library managed encryption. Th ate <u>v</u> Go Legical Library	Key Manager Ad IIIOther Lopical Libraries and 2 Key Mi ne primary IP address will be listed firs IP Address		pecific logical librariès. Key k / Port Type	IBM He Aanager Addresses will be used for all Version
System Summary Hi Cartridges Bi Uhary Bi Drives Hi Dres Hi Ports Voy can er logical libra Coperator Panel Security Key Manager Addresses StMD System Data SMD System Data Secure Social Libra SMD System Data Secure Social Libra	er up to 4 Key Manager Addresses for Al es set to library managed encryption. Th ete v Go Logical Library	WOther Logical Libraries and 2 Key Mi ne primary IP address will be listed firs	anager Addresses for s st for each logical library		Aanager Addresses will be used for all
N Centrologies N LUkray N Drives N Drives N Dents N Departscr Danel Security Rey Hanager Addresses Seton Software SMM System Data SMM System Data Seton Software Seton Software Se	er up to 4 Key Manager Addresses for Al es set to library managed encryption. Th ete v Go Logical Library				
Web Security Operator Danal Security Key Manager Addresses SIMID Settings SIMID Settings SIMID System Ote SIMIT Skytem Ote SIMIT Skytem Ote Secure Societ Super	ate Go Logical Library				
Key Manager Addresses SMMP Destinations SMMP Destinations SMM-9 System Date SMI-9 Addresses Secure Socket Layer	Logical Library	IP Address	Port	Port Type	Version
SMMP Destinations SMMP System Data SMI-S Agent Library IP Addresses Secure Socket Layer					
Done					

Figure 3-20 TS3500 Key Manager Addresses

- 3. Perform one of these actions:
 - To create a key manager address: From the Select Action drop-down box, select Create and click Go. The Key Manager Create window displays. Enter the IP address and port of the key manager and click Apply (Figure 3-21).

실 Create Key Manager /	Address - Mozilla Firefox	X
http://9.11.196.226/US	/En_US-En_US-02950820793/whtm_key_manager_new.htm	☆
Key Manager Create		
Create a Key Manag	ger Address	
Logical Library		
All/Other Logical Lit	braries 🕶	
IP Address (IPv4)		
TCP Port	3801	
Use as primary		
Apply Cancel		
Done		

Figure 3-21 TS3500 Create Key Manager Addresses

- To change a key manager address: Select the key manager address that you want to change. From the Select Action drop-down box, select Modify and click Go. The Key Manager Modify window displays. Enter any necessary changes in the IP Address or Port fields and click Apply.
- To delete a key manager address: Select the key manager address that you want to delete. From the Select Action drop-down box, select **Delete** and click **Go**. The window displays the message, "Are you sure you want to delete this key manager entry?" Select **OK**. A pop-up window confirms the deletion. Select **Close**.

3.4.2 Tape drives, libraries, and media relationship

Table 3-2 provides an overview of the relationships between tape libraries, drives, and media.

Tape library	Tape drive	Tape media	Encryption method
TS2900	3572-S4H	LTO4	LME, AME, SME
TS3100	LTO4	LTO4	LME, AME, SME Using T10, for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only.
TS3200	LTO4, LTO5	LTO4, LTO5	LME, AME, SME Using T10, for SAS and Fibre Channel drives only.
TS3310	LTO4 SAS and Fibre Channel	LTO4	LME, AME, SME
TS3400	TS1120	3592-JA, JB	LME, AME, SME
TS3500	LTO4, LTO5, TS1120, TS1130	LTO4, LTO5, 3592-JA, JB, JJ, WORM-JR, JW, JX	LME, AME, SME

Table 3-2 Encryption hardware components relationship



4

Planning for software and hardware

In the previous chapters, we introduced the basics of encryption, how IBM tape data encryption functions, and how Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) works. We also covered the tape drives, tape control units, and tape libraries that support encryption.

This chapter describes planning considerations for the tape hardware and the operating systems that you should consider before implementing IBM tape data encryption.

If you plan to use library-managed encryption (LME) or system-managed encryption (SME), you should have TKLM implemented before you can encrypt any tapes. However, many people plan for their tape hardware and their operating system first and then plan TKLM implementation. These two major parts of your tape data encryption implementation might be handled by different people in your organization.

4.1 Encryption planning

Encryption is not your typical tape or library upgrade. Significant new function and infrastructure must be implemented with an encryption solution. Planning is vital to a smooth rollout of an encryption solution into an existing environment. Before you tackle this chapter, if this is your first experience with IBM tape drives or libraries, make sure you have read Chapter 3, "IBM System Storage tape and tape automation for encryption" on page 39.

Then, even if you have had experience with IBM Encryption Facility for z/OS or other vendor cryptology products, you should read 1.5, "Concepts of tape data encryption" on page 8 and Chapter 2, "IBM tape encryption methods" on page 23 to understand how the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) component ties your operating system platforms together with your keystores.

After reading those basic topics, you are ready to use this chapter to plan the implementation of the IBM TS1120 or TS1130 tape data encryption, or 3592 Encryption solution; and the Linear Tape-Open (LTO) or LTO4 or LTO5 Encryption solution.

4.2 Planning assumptions

Note: For the purpose of this discussion we assume that your tape drives and tape libraries have already been installed without encryption.

You are probably familiar with IBM tape drive or tape library implementations and upgrades of the past. If you are implementing new IBM tape drives or tape libraries, you might find it useful to review one of the existing IBM Redbooks publications for planning and implementation details, such as *IBM System Storage Tape Library Guide for Open Systems*, SG24-5946. This book describes the TS1120, TS1130, LTO5 and the LTO4 tape drives in open systems implementations. This book also discusses open systems IBM tape libraries: the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100, TS2900.

This chapter focuses primarily on the encryption aspects of the solution because the underlying tape and application processing basics, with which you are familiar, do not change.

4.3 Encryption planning quick-reference

The tables in this section compare encryption on the 3592 drive family to encryption on the LTO4 drive:

- ► Table 4-1 compares encryption characteristics.
- ► Table 4-2 on page 68 compares drive, library, and controller prerequisites for encryption.
- Table 4-3 on page 69 compares available encryption methods.

On open systems platforms, the 3592 and the LTO4 or LTO5 are almost identical in the encryption methods that they support and their operating system software requirements. However, the LTO4 or LTO5 and TS1130 support can require later software levels.

Table 4-1 compares encryption characteristics of the 3592 drive family and LTO4 and LTO5 drives.

Description	3592 Tape drive family (3592-E05, 3592-EU6, 3592-E06)	LTO4 and LTO5 Tape drives
Encryption standard	AES (256-bit)	AES (256-bit)
Encryption process for data	Symmetric AES (256)	Symmetric AES (256)
Encryption key model	Wrapped key	Direct key
Encryption type for data keys	Public-private key (Asymmetric)	TDS
Data keys used	Unique data key for each cartridge	Keylist: A list or range of data keys used, pregenerated in keystore
Data keys stored?	Wrapped (that is, encrypted) data keys (2) stored on cartridge, called EEDKs	Stored in keystore
Rewriteable media required	3592 JJ, JA, or JB cartridges	Ultrium 4/5 media only
WORM media required	3592 JR, JW, or JX cartridges	Ultrium 4 WORM media only
Rekeying support	z/OS, TS3500	No

Table 4-1 Encryption implementation characteristics comparison

Table 4-2 compares tape drive, library, and controller prerequisites for tape data encryption.

Description	3592 tape drive family	LTO4 and LTO5 tape drives
Tape drives	•	
Drive machine type and model	3592-E05 3592-E06 3592-EU6	 TS1040 (3588-F4A) TS1050 Feature code (FC) 8144 or FC8145 of the TS3310, TS3200, or TS3100 tape library TS2340 (3580-S43) TS2350 TS2250 TS2250 TS2250 TS2900 (3572-SH4) With Feature Code 5901 (Transparent LTO Encryption)
Encryption-capable	FC9592 or FC5592 for 3592-E05. Standard on 3592-E06 and 3592-EU6	Standard
Encryption-enabled and encryption method set	FC9596 or FC5596 on 3592-E05 drive, FC9595 or FC5595 on controller, or with library menus	Via library menus
Tape libraries		
TS3500 Library (3584-L <i>xx</i>):	Yes, FC9900 TS1130 requires ALMS (Depending on configuration FC 1690, 1692, 1693 or 1694)	Yes, FC9900 and FC1604
 Frames for drives 	3584-L22, L23, D22, and D23	3584-L53, L52, L32, D53, D52, and D32
TS3400 library (3577-L5U)	Yes, FC9900	No
TS3310 library (3576-E9U and 3576-L5B)	No	Yes, FC9900 and FC5900
TS3200 library (3573-L4U)	No	Yes, FC9900 and FC5900
TS3100 library (3573-L2U)	No	Yes, FC9900 and FC5900
TS2900 autoloader (3572-SH4)	No	Yes, FC5901

Table 4-2 Drive, library, and controller encryption prerequisites

Table 4-3 compares the encryption methods available for each tape drive environment.

Table 4-3 Encryption methods comparison

Encryption method or platform	3592 tape drives	LTO4 and LTO5 tape drive
Application-managed encryption (AM	IE)	
IBM Tivoli Storage Manager	TS1120 Release 5.3.4 TS1130 Release 5.4.3 or 5.5.1	5.3.5.1
System-managed encryption (SME)		
IBM AIX	AIX V5.2 or later, Atape device driver for TS1130 use 11.2.9.0 or later	AIX V5.2 or later, Atape 10.4.7.0 device driver
Sun Solaris	IBMTape device driver TS1130 IBMTape.4.1.8.7 or later	IBMTape.4.1.5.0 device driver or later
IBM System i5®	No	No
Linux on System z	Lin_Tape device driver	Lin_Tape device driver
Linux on other servers	Lin_Tape device driver	Lin_Tape device driver
Hewlett-Packard UNIX (HP-UX)	No	No
Windows	IBMTape device driver For TS1130 use 6.1.9.8 or later. At the time of this writing there are no WHQL drivers for the TS1130	IBMTape device driver
Library-managed encryption (LME)		
Tape Libraries providing this support	TS3500, and TS3400	TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100, TS2900
IBM AIX	AIX V5.2 or later	AIX 5L [™] V5.1,V5.2, or V5.3
Sun Solaris	Sun Solaris 8, 9, or 10 TS1130 use IBMTape.4.1.8.7 or later	Sun Solaris 8, 9, or 10
IBM System i5	TS1120 i5/OS V5.2 or later TS1130 i5/OS v5.3 or later	i5/OS V5.3 or later
Linux on System z	SLES9, SLES10, RHEL4, RHEL5	SLES9, SLES10, or RHEL4, RHEL5
Linux on other servers	SLES9, SLES10, RHEL4, RHEL10, TS1130 requires lin_tape 1.19.0 10	SLES9, SLES10, RHEL4, RHEL5
HP-UX	64-bit HP-UX 11.0, 11i v1 v2, v3, or later atdd.84 or later	64-bit HP-UX 11i v1, 11i v2, 11i.v3 or later atdd.84 or later
Windows	Windows Server 2000, Windows 2003 Server, Windows 2008 Server For TS1130 use 6.1.9.8 or later. At the time of this writing there are no WHQL drivers for the TS1130	Windows Server 2003 (build 3790 or later), Windows 2008 Server use 6.1.9.5 or later

4.4 Choosing encryption methods

When starting to plan encryption management, there are several important considerations to determine what solutions are available and what will fit in your environment. The first important step for your planning consideration is to identify the available tape data encryption solutions for your environment, as follows:

1. Identify which type of server is writing and reading the tape data.

Are all of the servers of one type or one operating system, or do you have multiple operating systems that will be encrypting tape?

- 2. Identify encryption methods that are available for your server environments and choose the encryption methods that you will use.
- 3. Identify which server or servers will host the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) component. Identifying the server or servers is really a separate decision from where the actual tape encryption takes place, although most people generally implement the TKLM on the same platform where the tape drives reside. Other important considerations are keystore and security requirements.

Depending on your environment and your operating system platforms, you can use one or more methods of encryption. You do not have to use the same method of encryption for all implementations.

4.4.1 Encryption method comparison

Table 4-4 lists information about encryption policy implementation and encryption key management for each of the three encryption methods: library-managed encryption (LME), application-managed encryption (AME) and system-managed encryption (SME).

Encryption method	Where is the policy defined	Key management
LME	 For 3592 drive family: TS3500 Web Interface TS3400 Web Interface For LTO4 or LTO5 drives: TS3500 Web Interface TS3310 Web Interface TS3200 Web Interface TS3100 Web Interface TS2900 Web Interface 	 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM)
AME	Tivoli Storage Manager	Tivoli Storage Manager
SME	 For 3592 drive family: DFSMS (z/OS) For 3592, LTO4, LTO5 drives: Atape Device Driver (AIX) IBMTape Device Driver (Sun) IBMTape Device Driver (Linux) IBMTape Device Driver (Windows) No HP-UX support 	 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM)

Table 4-4 IBM tape data encryption methods, policies, and key management

4.4.2 Open systems encryption methods

In open systems environments (including Linux on System z), you usually have a choice of the method of encryption to use. On most operating systems, all three encryption methods are available: LME, AME, and SME. Table 4-5 compares several of the differences and considerations for open systems solutions.

Method	Policy granularity	Advantages	Disadvantages
LME	 Encryption is configured (on/off) at the library GUI for each logical grouping of drives (for example, all drives in a TS3500 logical library). One of: Encrypt with default TKLM keys. Barcode Encryption Policy (BEP) for VOLSER ranges of cartridges associated with logical grouping of drives. Internal Label Encryption Policy (ILEP) currently supported by NetBackup. 	Centralized enterprise-class key management. Broadest application and operating system coverage.	Not available for drives outside an IBM tape library.
AME	Encryption policy is configured at the application GUI. Granularity is application-dependent.	Fewer new responsibilities for storage administrators.	Key management is not centralized. Only available currently in Tivoli Storage Manager.
SME (using device drivers)	Encryption is configured (on/off) at the host for each device driver instance, for example, the host-to-drive relationship.	Centralized enterprise-class key management. Broadest library and non-library coverage.	Requires ISV support for IBM tape drive device drivers.

Table 4-5 Comparison of open systems encryption methods

Note: LME BEP is supported only on the TS3500 tape library. The following LME policy settings are supported on all tape libraries:

- Encrypt All
- Internal Label Selective Encryption
- Internal Label Encrypt All

Note the following considerations about the encryption methods:

Application-managed encryption

This method might be the most advantageous when a single application is the primary user of tape, for example, when all of the tape processing in an open systems environment is related to a single software application, such as a backup and restore application (Tivoli Storage Manager). In this case, having the backup and restore application manage the keys might be the most convenient solution. When you consider implementing an encryption management plan at the application layer using IBM Tivoli Storage Manager, also consider an important point, which is that this software has to be updated on every server that provides data to be encrypted. System-managed encryption and library-managed encryption

These methods are perhaps the most logical approaches in environments where tape assets are shared across multiple applications. This is because of the transparency of encryption offered through the use of the TKLM. As with application-managed encryption, updates might be required for certain aspects of the overall system, such as device drivers, operating systems, DFSMS, or controllers, to fully enable encryption.

4.4.3 Decision time

You have to decide which encryption methods are best for your environment. In general, we expect most clients to use system-managed encryption for their z/OS, z/VM, z/VSE, and z/TPF operating systems (SME is really the only choice) and library-managed encryption for their open system operating systems (including Linux on System z).

4.5 Solutions available by operating system

In this section, we identify which encryption methods are available for each operating system platform and tape hardware combination and the required hardware and software prerequisites.

4.5.1 AIX solution components

This section summarizes the AIX support for tape data encryption.

Operating system support

IBM System p running AIX supports:

- Library-managed encryption (LME) in conjunction with the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape libraries and the TS2900 tape autoloader
- System-managed encryption (SME) through the Atape device drivers
- Application-managed encryption (AME) with Tivoli Storage Manager

This information is summarized for library and drive combinations in Table 4-6.

Tape library	TS3500	TS3400	TS3310	TS3200	TS3100	TS2900
TS1130 tape drive TS1120 tape drive	SME, LME, AME	SME, LME, AME	No	No	No	No
LTO4 or LTO5 tape drive	SME, LME, AME	No	SME, LME, AME	SME, LME, AME	SME, LME, AME	SME, LME, AME

Table 4-6 AIX encryption support

System-managed encryption with AIX requires:

- AIX V5.1, AIX V5.2, AIX V5.3, or later.
- An Encryption Key Manager component available to the AIX system.
- The Atape device driver supporting encryption must be installed, updated, and utilized. You can download it from:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/AIX/

Device driver

Library-managed encryption with AIX requires:

- ► AIX V5.1, AIX V5.2, AIX V5.3, or later.
- An Encryption Key Manager component available to the library.
- ► A TS3500, or TS3400 tape library with TS1120 drives and 3592 media.
- A TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, or a TS3100 tape library with LTO4 drives and Ultrium 4 media.

For AIX system-managed encryption only, Table 4-7 describes device driver order updates.

Device driver	Type of update
TS1130 tape drive TS1120 tape drive LTO Ultrium 4 tape drive	Included in the device driver web download at: ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/AIX/

Tape drives

Table 4-8 identifies tape drive combinations and feature codes.

Tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update
TS1130	3592-E06 3592-EU6	No features on the drive are required for AME, SME, or LME.
TS1120	3592-E05	See TS1120 prerequisites, encryption-capable and encryption-enabled.
LTO4 or LTO5	3588-F4A,F5A	No features on the drive are required for AME, SME, or LME.
TS2340, TS2350	3580-S43, S53	No features required for application-managed encryption
TS2240,TS2250(half high stand-alone LTO4 or LTO5)	3580-H4S, H5S	No features required for AME.

 Table 4-8
 AIX Tape drive requirements for encryption

Tape libraries

Table 4-9 identifies tape library order options and firmware updates.

Table 4-9 AIX tape library requirements

Tape library and tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update
TS3500 with TS1130 drives	3584-L22 and L23 3584-D22 and D23	ALMS (Depending on configuration FC 1690, 1692, 1693 or 1694) Order FC9900. Library Firmware 8160 or later For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/s upport/lto/3584/downloading.html

Tape library and tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update
TS3500 with TS1120 drives	3584-L22 and L23 3584-D22 and D23	Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation. For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/s upport/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3400 with TS1130 drives	3577-L5U	Library Firmware 0032.0000 or later. Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation.
TS3400 with TS1120 drives	3577-L5U	Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation.
TS3500 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3584-L32, L52, and L53 3584-D32, D52, and D53	Order FC9900 and FC1604, Transparent LTO Encryption. For firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/s upport/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3310 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3576-L5B and E9U	Order FC9900 and FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS3200 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3573-L4U	Order FC9900 and FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS3100 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3573-L2U	Order FC9900 and FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS2900 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3572-S4H	Order FC9900 and FC5901, Transparent LTO Encryption

4.5.2 Linux on System p, System x, and other Intel or AMD Opteron servers

System p, System x, and other Intel®-based or AMD Opteron-based Linux servers support:

- System-managed encryption (SME) with lin_tape device drivers
- Library-managed encryption (LME) on the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200 TS3100 tape libraries and TS2900 tape autoloader
- Application-managed encryption (AME) with Tivoli Storage Manager

Table 4-10 shows the encryption methods that are available on tape library and tape drive combinations.

Tape library	TS3500	TS3400	TS3310	TS3200	TS3100	TS2900
TS1120 and TS1130 tape drive	LME, SME, AME	LME, SME, AME	No	No	No	No
LTO4 or LTO5 tape drives	LME, SME, AME	No	LME, SME, AME	LME, SME, AME	LME, SME, AME	LME, SME, AME

Table 4-10 Linux-supported encryption methods

System-managed encryption with Linux requires:

- One of the following Linux distributions:
 - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 or 10 (SLES 9 or SLES 10)
 - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 or 5 (REHL 4, REHL 5) or later
- An Encryption Key Manager or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager available to the Linux system
- The lin_tape device drivers supporting encryption must be installed, updated, and utilized. Download the lin_tape device drivers from the following website:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/Linux

Library-managed encryption requires:

- One of the following Linux distributions:
 - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (SLES 9) or later
 - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 (REHL 4) or later
 - Asianux 2.0
- An Encryption Key Manager or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager available to the Linux system
- One of the tape drive and library combinations from Table 4-10

Tape drive

Table 4-11 identifies the tape drive combinations and feature codes.

Tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update	
TS1130	3592-E06 3592-EU6	No features on the drive are required for AME, SME, or LME.	
TS1120	3592-E05 new drive order	See TS1120 prerequisites,	
TS1120	3592-E05 field upgrade for encryption	encryption-capable and encryption-enabled.	
LTO4 or LTO5	3588-F4A,F5A or features of the TS3310, TS3200, and TS3100 tape libraries	No features on the drive are required for AME, SME, or LME.	
TS2340	3580-S43	No features are required for application-managed encryption.	
TS2240 (half high stand-alone LTO4 or LTO5)	3580-H4S	No features are required for AME.	

Table 4-11 Linux tape drive requirements for encryption

Tape libraries

Table 4-12 identifies the tape library order options and firmware updates.

Table 4-12 Linux tape library requirements

Tape library and tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update
TS3500 with TS1130 drives	3584-L22 and L23 3584-D22 and D23	ALMS (Depending on configuration FC 1690, 1692, 1693, or 1694) Order FC9900. Library Firmware 8160 or later For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/sup port/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3500 with TS1120 drives	3584-L22 and L23 3584-D22 and D23	For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/sup port/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3400 with TS1130 drives	3577-L5U	Library Firmware 0032.0000 or later. Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation.
TS3400 with TS1120 drives	3577-L5U	Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation.
TS3500 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3584-L32, L52, and L53 3584-D32, D52, and D53	Order FC9900 and FC1604, Transparent LTO Encryption. For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/sup port/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3310 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3576-L5B and E9U	Order FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS3200 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3573-L4U	Order FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS3100 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3573-L2U	Order FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS2900 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3572-S4H	Order FC9900 and FC5901, Transparent LTO Encryption

4.5.3 HP-UX, Sun, and Windows components

This section summarizes the encryption support of operating systems, and the tape drive and tape library requirements.

Operating system support

This section discusses support of HP-UX, Sun Solaris, and Windows systems.

HP-UX systems

HP-UX supports the following encryption methods:

- Library-managed encryption on the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape libraries and TS2900 tape autoloader
- ► Application-managed encryption with Tivoli Storage Manager

Library-managed encryption with HP-UX requires:

- ► HP-UX 11.0, 11i v1 and v2, or later for TS1130, TS1120, LTO4 and LTO5 drives
- An Encryption Key Manager or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager available to the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape library or TS2900 tape autoloader
- ► A TS3500, or TS3400 tape library with TS1130 or TS1120 drives and 3592 media
- A TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape library or a TS2900 tape autoloader with LTO4 drives and Ultrium 4 media or LTO5 drives and Ultrium 5 media

Sun Solaris systems

Sun Solaris supports the following encryption methods:

- System-managed encryption through the IBM tape device drivers
- Library-managed encryption in conjunction with the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape libraries and TS2900 tape autoloader
- Application-managed encryption with Tivoli Storage Manager

System-managed encryption with Sun Solaris requires:

- Sun Solaris 8, 9, and 10
- An Encryption Key Manager or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager available to the Sun Solaris system
- The IBMTape device drivers supporting encryption must be installed, updated, and utilized. The IBMTape device drivers can be downloaded from the following website:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/Solaris/

Library-managed encryption with Sun Solaris requires:

- ► Sun Solaris 8, 9, and 10
- An Encryption Key Manager component available to the library
- A TS3500 or TS3400 tape library with TS1130 or TS1120 drives and 3592 media
- A TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape library or a TS2900 tape autoloader with LTO4 drives and Ultrium 4 media or LTO5 drives and Ultrium 5 media

Windows systems

Windows supports:

- Library-managed encryption (LME) in conjunction with the TS3500, TS3400, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape library or a TS2900 tape autoloader.
- System-managed encryption (SME) through the IBMTape device drives
- Application-managed encryption (AME) with Tivoli Storage Manager

System-managed encryption with Windows requires:

- Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003 or Windows Server 2008
- An Encryption Key Manager or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager available to the Windows system
- The IBMTape device drivers supporting encryption must be installed, updated, and utilized. Download the IBMTape device drivers from the following website:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/Windows/

Library-managed encryption on Windows requires:

- ► Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, or Windows 2008
- An Encryption Key Manager or Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager available to the library
- ► A TS3500, or TS3400 tape library with TS1130 or TS1120 drives and 3592 media
- A TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape library or a TS2900 tape autoloader with LTO4 drives and Ultrium 4 media

Table 4-13 and Table 4-14 describe the tape drive and the tape library order options and firmware updates.

Tape drives

Table 4-13 lists tape drive combinations and feature codes for the operating systems.

Tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update	
TS1130	3592-E06 3592-EU6	No features on the drive are required for SME, LME, and AME.	
TS1120	3592-E05 new drive order	See TS1120 prerequisites,	
TS1120	3592-E05 field upgrade for encryption	encryption-capable and encryption-enabled.	
LTO4 or LTO5	3588-F4A or features of the TS3310, TS3200, and TS3100 tape libraries	No features on the drive are required for SME, LME, and AME.	
TS2340	3580-S43	No features are required for AME.	
TS2240 (half high stand-alone LTO4 or LTO5)	3580-H4S	No features required for AME.	

Table 4-13 HP, Sun, and Windows tape drive requirements for encryption

Tape libraries

Table 4-14 describes the tape library order options and firmware updates.

Table 4-14 HP, Sun, and Windows tape library requirements

Tape library with tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update
TS3500 with TS1130 drives	3584-L22 and L23 3584-D22 and D23	ALMS (Depending on configuration FC 1690, 1692, 1693, or 1694) Order FC9900 Library Firmware 8160 or later For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/suppo rt/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3500 with TS1120 drives	3584-L22 and L23 3584-D22 and D23	Order FC9900. For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/suppo rt/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3400 with TS1130 drives	3577-L5U	Library Firmware 0032.0000 or later. Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation.

Tape library with tape drive	Machine types and models	Type of update
TS3400 with TS1120 drives	3577-L5U	Order FC9900 for Encryption Configuration documentation.
TS3500 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3584-L32, L52, and L53 3584-D32, D52, and D53	Order FC9900 and FC1604. For the firmware update, visit: http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/suppo rt/lto/3584/downloading.html
TS3310 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3576-L5B and E9U	Order FC9900 and FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS3200 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3573-L4U	Order FC9900 and FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS3100 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3573-L2U	Order FC9900 and FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption
TS2900 with LTO4 or LTO5 drives	3572-S4H	Order FC9900 and FC5901, Transparent LTO Encryption

4.5.4 IBM Tivoli Storage Manager

Currently, Tivoli Storage Manager is the only application that provides application-managed encryption for TS1130,TS1120, LTO5 and LTO4 tape drives.

AME is best where operating environments run an application that is already capable of generating and managing encryption policies and keys, such as IBM Tivoli Storage Manager. Policies that specify when to use encryption are defined through the application interface. The policies and keys pass through the data path between the application layer and the TS1130, TS1120, LTO5, or LTO4 tape drives. Encryption is the result of interaction between the application and the encryption-enabled tape drive and is transparent to the system and library layers.

The following tape drives and libraries are supported:

- TS1130 tape drives in a TS3500 tape library, TS3400 tape library, IBM TotalStorage 3952 Model C20 Tape Frame, or rack
- TS1120 tape drives in a TS3500 tape library, TS3400 tape library, IBM TotalStorage 3952 Model C20 Tape Frame, or rack
- LTO4 or LTO5 tape drives in a TS3500 tape library, TS3310 tape library, TS3200 tape library, TS3100 tape library, or TS2900 tape autoloader.

For details about setting up application-managed encryption, refer to your IBM Tivoli Storage Manager documentation or visit the following website for more information:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp

4.6 Ordering information

This section discusses features and microcode levels you might have to order and install to support your encryption solution. We discuss the following prerequisites:

- TS1130 tape drive
- TS1120 tape drive

- ► LTO4 or LTO5 tape drives
- Tape libraries
- Tape controllers
- TS7700 Virtualization Engine
- General software

4.6.1 TS1120 tape drive prerequisites

For any TS1120 drive to be able to support encryption, it must be *encryption-capable* before it can be *enabled (encryption-enabled)* with the particular encryption method (AME, SME, or LME) to be used.

Encryption-capable

Prerequisites for the TS1120 tape drive are:

- ► A no-charge encryption-capable feature code for new TS1120 tape drives. All TS1120 drives shipped since 8 September 2006 (serial number 13-65000 or greater) require FC9592, which indicates that the drive is encryption-capable.
- If your TS1120 drive shipped prior to 6 September 2006 (serial number 13-50000 to 13-64999), you might have to order an optional chargeable encryption feature upgrade, FC5592, for the installed TS1120 tape drive. This feature code provides the encryption electronics and causes the TS1120 drive to be encryption-capable. The upgrade might contain refurbished parts.

Encryption-enabled

In most situations, the TS1120 tape drives can be encryption-enabled by using the library web interfaces. In that case, no prerequisite feature codes are required. The actual procedures for encryption-enabling the drives are discussed in the implementation chapters.

The encryption-enabled environments and the prerequisite features (if any) to order are:

- For System z TS1120 tape drives attached to a 3592 Model J70 or a TS1120 Model C06 tape controller, read 4.6.2, "Tape controller prerequisites" on page 81.
- ► For open-systems-attached TS1130 drives in a TS3500 tape library, ALMS is required depending on the library configuration FC 1690 for L22 libraries, FC1692, 1693, or 1694, depending on the level of capacity expansion installed. Library Firmware 8160 or later is required. You enable encryption for the drives through the Tape Library web interface.
- For open-systems-attached TS1130 drives in a TS3400 tape library, you enable encryption for the drives with the Tape Library web interface. No prerequisite feature codes are required.
- ► For open-systems-attached TS1120 drives in a TS3500 or TS3400 tape library, you enable encryption for the drives with the Tape Library web interface. No prerequisite feature codes are required.
- For open-systems-attached or TS7700-attached TS1130 tape drives, the Tape Library Specialist user interface provides the capability for you to enable encryption for the drives. No prerequisite feature codes are required.
- For open-systems-attached or TS7700-attached TS1120 tape drives, the Tape Library Specialist provides the capability for you to enable encryption for the drives. No prerequisite feature codes are required.
- For open-systems-attached or TS7700-attached TS1120 tape drives, order FC9596 (Plant) or FC5596 (Field) for each drive to be enabled. These features provide instructions

and procedures for the service support representative (SSR) to enable encryption for the drive and set the encryption method for the drive.

For open-systems-attached TS1120 or TS1130 tape drives in a rack or C20 Silo frame, order FC9596 (Plant) or FC5596 (Field) for each drive to be enabled. These features provide instructions and procedures for the SSR to enable encryption for the drive and set the encryption method for the drive.

4.6.2 Tape controller prerequisites

Support for the TS1120 or TS1130 encryption function installed in any IBM controller attachment requires a minimum level of firmware for the 3592-J70 tape controller, TS1120 tape controller (3592-C06), or 3590 A60 enterprise tape controller (even though the A60 does not support encryption or TS1130) where you intend to use tape cartridges from a common tape cartridge scratch pool.

The minimum level of firmware is 1.19.5.*x* for the 3592-J70 tape controller or 1.21.x.x for the TS1120 tape controller (3592-C06), and 1.16.1.11 for the 3590-A60 enterprise tape controller.

The level of firmware required for the TS1120 tape controller (3592-C06) and the 3592-J70 tape controller ships the first time that you order FC5595 or when you order FC9595 on a new controller. To obtain the microcode required for the 3590-A60 enterprise tape controller, order FC0520 (Function Enhancement Field).

For TS1120 or TS1130 drives attached to the System z platforms z/OS, z/VM, z/VSE, or z/TPF, a TS1120 Model C06 or a 3592 Model J70 tape controller is required. These tape controllers support encryption in the System z ESCON/FICON® environment.

To configure and enable the encryption capability of the tape control unit (CU) and attached tape drives, order CU Encryption Configuration, FC9595 (Plant) or FC5595 (Field) on the Model J70 or C06 controllers. CU Encryption Configuration (Field FC5595) must also be ordered when an Encryption Configuration change is required on the tape controller or attached tape drives. One of these CU Encryption Configuration features must be installed whether in-band or out-of-band encryption support is implemented. This feature provides instructions and procedures for the SSR to enable encryption for the tape control unit and to enable encryption and set the system-managed encryption method for all of the TS1120 or TS1130 drives attached to the tape control unit.

Note: When one of the CU Encryption Configuration features is installed, it is not necessary to order the Encryption Configuration/Plant or Field (FC9596 or FC5596) on the TS1120 tape drives attached to the controller. The CU Encryption Configuration feature enables encryption for all encryption-capable TS1120 drives attached to the controller. Unless the TS1120 tape drives are installed in a client rack, the minimum level of Library Manager licensed internal code will also be shipped when FC9595 is ordered or the first time that FC5595 is ordered for the control unit.

Tape controller out-of-band support

For ESCON/FICON System z environments using out-of-band support for encryption (z/VM, z/VSE, and z/TPF), routers are required to allow the tape controller to communicate with the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM). Order FC5593 (Router for TKLM Attach), which

provides dual routers to allow redundant connections between the tape controller and the TKLM. The installation of features required for out-of-band support depends on the automation platform supporting the TS1120 or TS1130 tape drives:

► For TS1120 and TS1130 tape drives in the *TS3500 Tape Library*:

Order one FC5593 on the 3953 Model F05 containing FC5505, Base Frame. This feature supports up to sixteen 3592 tape controllers in a TS3500/3953 Library Manager tape system.

► For TS1120 or TS1130 tape drives in the *TS3400 Tape Library*:

Order FC5247, Enhanced Router, on the TS1120 Model C06 controller to which the TS1120 drives are attached. This feature is required when attaching TS1120 drives in the TS3400 library to a TS1120 Model C06 controller, even when no encryption is needed.

- For TS1120 or TS1130 tape drives in the Storagetek 9310 Powerhorn Automated Tape Library:
 - When the tape drives are attached to the 3952 Model J70, order FC5593, Router for TKLM attach, on the 3590 Model C10 to support the first Model J70. One of FC4860, FC4862, FC9861, or FC9862 is required on the 3590 Model C10.

To support a second 3592 Model J70 in the 3590 Model C10 frame, order FC5594, Attach Additional CU to Router, on the Model C10. FC5593 is required on the Model C10 to install FC5594.

 When the tape drives are attached to the TS1120 Model C06, order FC5593 on the 3952 Model F05. FC7315 is required on the 3952 Model F05.

To support more than one TS1120 Model C06 controller in the same 3952 Model F05 frame, order one of FC5594, Attach Additional CU to Router, for each additional Model C06 to use out-of-band support. FC5593 is required on the 3952 Model F05 to install FC5594. The maximum quantity for FC5594 on the 3952 Model F05 is two.

► For TS1120 or TS1130 tape drives in a client-supplied rack:

Order one of FC5593 on the 3592 Model J70 or TS1120 Model C06 tape controller, which is contained in 3953 Model F05 containing FC5505, Base Frame. This feature supports up to sixteen 3592 or TS1120 tape controllers in a 3953 Tape System.

For the latest details about specific hardware, software, and Fibre Channel support for the IBM TS1120 Tape Drive, refer to the following website:

http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/pdf/compatibility/ts1120_interop.pdf

4.6.3 LTO4 or LTO5 tape drive prerequisites

For an LTO4 or an LTO5 drive to be able to support encryption, it must be an encryption-capable drive and then it must be enabled (encryption-enabled) with the particular encryption method (SME, LME, or AME) to be used:

- All LTO4 and LTO5 tape drives are encryption-capable (without any features) as long as they are using Ultrium 4 media or Ultrium 5 media, therefore, meeting LTO consortium specifications.
- The LTO4 and LTO5 tape drives will be encryption-enabled by using the library web interfaces. No prerequisite feature codes are required for the drive. The procedures for enabling encryption for the drives are described in the implementation chapters.

4.6.4 Tape library prerequisites

You can configure your hardware setup to support encryption for your business in a variety of ways. We list the tape library and tape controller requirements next.

TS3500 Tape Library prerequisites

The IBM TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drive can be installed and is supported in the TS3500 Tape Library Models L23, L22, D23, and D22. The IBM LTO4 or LTO5 Tape Drive can be installed and is supported in the TS3500 Tape Library Models L53, L52, L32, D53, D52, and D32. Support for the tape encryption function requires a minimum level of microcode firmware, and it is the client's responsibility to load, configure, and maintain the TS3500 Tape Library.

Important: You must order the no-charge FC9900 (Encryption Configuration) on one of the frames in the TS3500. We suggest ordering this feature for the L23, L22, L53, L52, or L32 frame for consistency because this feature code is where many other library features are specified. This feature provides instructions and a license key for activating encryption on the TS3500 Tape Library. Client-initiated procedures have to be completed for enabling and configuring the TS3500 Tape Library to support encryption. No additional features are required for TS1120 encryption.

When using an TS1130, Automated Library Management System (ALMS) is required; depending on the library configuration, this can be FC 1690 for L32, L22, or L52 libraries, FC1692, 1693, or 1694 depending on the level of capacity expansion installed.

If you plan to use LME or SME encryption methods for LTO4 or LTO5 drives in the TS3500 Tape Library, you must also order FC1604, Transparent LTO Encryption. The AME encryption method for LTO4 or LTO5 drives does not require FC1604.

TS3400 tape library prerequisites

For TS1120 and TS1130 encryption support of LME or SME encryption methods within the TS3400 tape library, order no-charge FC9900, Encryption Configuration, for machine type and model 3577-L5U.

This feature provides publication updates with information about enabling and configuring the IBM TS3400 Tape Library to support encryption. Client-initiated procedures need to be completed for enabling and configuring the IBM TS3400 Tape Library to support encryption with the TS1120 or TS1130 encryption-capable tape drive.

TS1120 drives in an IBM TS3400 Tape Library can either be open-systems-attached or controller-attached.

The minimum firmware level for the TS3400 to support a TS1130 tape drive is 0032.0000.

IBM TS3400 Tape Library attached to IBM TS1120 Tape Controller

The minimum machine code level required on the IBM TS1120 Tape Controller (3592-C06) to support attaching an IBM TS3400 Tape Library is 1.21.3.*xx* or later. You can use FC0520, Controller Licensed internal code Update, to order the most current level of machine code.

To support attaching an IBM TS3400 Tape Library and its drives to an IBM TS1120 Tape Controller, the TS3400 tape library (3577 Model L5U) requires the minimum machine code level 0009.0007 or later. The client is responsible for downloading and installing machine code updates to the IBM TS3400 Tape Library. Refer to the 3577 Sales Manual for more details.

To control IBM TS1120 Tape Drives or IBM TS1130 Tape Drives in an IBM TS3400 Tape Library, the IBM TS1120 Tape Controller must be installed in a client-supplied rack that usually contains the TS3400 libraries also. The TS3400 supports one or two TS1120 or TS1130 tape drives and up to eighteen 3592 tape cartridges. A TS1120 tape controller can attach up to seven TS3400 tape libraries. Each TS3400 tape library can only access cartridges in its own library. Only tape drives installed in TS3400 tape libraries can be connected to a TS1120 tape controller that has installed FC9014, Attach TS3400 to CU.

The IBM TS1120 Tape Controller (3592 Model C06) feature codes are:

- ► FC9014, Attach TS3400 to CU, is required.
- ► FC4641, Install Controller in Rack, is required.
- FC5247, Enhanced Router, is required to provide management interface connections to the TS3400 library and to the IBM TS3000 System Console (TSSC).
- FC3478, Dual Ported Fibre Adapter, is required on the IBM TS1120 Tape Controller for attachment of 3592 tape drives.

The IBM TS3400 Tape Library (3577 Model L5U) feature codes are:

- FC9014, Attach TS3400 to CU, is required and provides an Ethernet cable to connect the library to the enhanced router in the TS1120 tape controller configuration.
- FC7004, TS3400 Rack Mount Kit, is required.

TS3310 tape library prerequisites

To support any encryption, order no-charge FC9900, Encryption Configuration. If you plan to use LME or SME encryption methods, also order chargeable FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption. The AME encryption method does not require FC5900.

TS3200 or TS3100 tape library prerequisites

To support any encryption, order no-charge FC9900, Encryption Configuration. If you plan to use LME or SME encryption methods, also order chargeable FC5900, Transparent LTO Encryption. The AME encryption method does not require FC5900.

TS2900 tape autoloader prerequisites

To support any encryption, order no-charge FC9900, Encryption Configuration. If you plan to use LME or SME encryption methods, also order chargeable FC5901, Transparent LTO Encryption. The AME method does not require FC5901.

4.6.5 Other library and rack open systems installations

When you install encryption-capable TS1120 tape drives or TS1130 tape drives in either a 3592 Model C20 Silo Compatible Frame or in a 19-inch rack and you intend to use tape cartridges from a common scratch pool, minimum microcode levels are required for any other 3592-J1A drive or any TS1120 drive without the encryption capability. These microcode levels enable the non-encryption-capable drives to recognize the encrypted data format on a cartridge.

The minimum level of microcode firmware is:

- D3I0_851 for the IBM 3592-J1A Enterprise Tape Drive
- D3I1_919 for the IBM TS1120 Tape Drive (3592-E05)

The minimum level of microcode firmware with TS1130 E3 formatted media is:

- ► D3I0_C90 for the IBM 3592-J1A Enterprise Tape Drive
- D3I1_DA0 for the IBM TS1120 Tape Drive (3592-E05)

You can upgrade the drive microcode levels or order these microcode levels as FC0500 on the drive.

4.6.6 General software prerequisites for encryption

In this section, we present general information about the operating system software requirements. Specific information about the software release levels is provided in the following sections, where each operating system is described in detail. The following list summarizes support for encryption in various environments:

- Support for encryption on TS1120 or TS1130 in open systems environments is provided in AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Sun, Microsoft Windows Server 2000, Microsoft Windows 2003 Server or Microsoft Windows 2008 operating system environments.
- Support for encryption on LTO4 and LTO5 in open systems environments is provided in AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Sun, Microsoft Windows Server 2000, Microsoft Windows 2003 Server, or Microsoft Windows 2008 Server operating system environments.

The installation of a TS1120, TS1130, LTO5, or LTO4 drive with encryption can require code updates for System z, System i, System p, and supported open systems device drivers or storage management software. The IBM account team or IBM Business Partner must confirm that the client checks the appropriate preventive service planning (PSP) buckets for System z environments or the equivalent support levels required for their particular software environment prior to the installation of the TS1130, TS1120, LTO4, or LTO5 with encryption. A solutions assurance call is required at a minimum for the installation of the first new TS1130, TS1120. LTO4, or LTO5 tape drive with encryption activated in an account.

To obtain an update of the open systems device drivers, use anonymous FTP from:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

Then, look in the particular directories that represent your operating system environments.

For details about supported software versions and release levels for the TS1130 tape drive, and hardware support information, refer to the following website and follow the link to the System Storage Interoperation Center:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/ts1130/index.html

For details about supported software versions and release levels for the TS1120 tape drive, as well as hardware support information, refer to the following website:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/pdf/compatibility/ts1120_interop.pdf

4.6.7 TS1120 and TS1130 supported platforms

The TS1120 and TS1130 tape drives are supported in the widest range of mainframe and Open Systems environments:

- ► Mainframe-attached:
 - IBM System z running z/OS using ESCON® or FICON channels
 - IBM System z running z/VM using ESCON or FICON channels
 - IBM System z running z/VSE using ESCON or FICON channels
 - IBM System z running z/TPF using ESCON or FICON channels

Note: A tape controller is required for attachment to ESCON or FICON channels on IBM mainframe servers.

- Open-systems-attached:
 - IBM System i
 - IBM System p
 - IBM System x
 - Sun Solaris servers
 - Hewlett-Packard servers
 - Linux-based servers (including Linux on System z using FCP channels)
 - Intel-compatible servers, Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008

TS1120 and TS1130 tape drives are available in the TS3500 or TS3400 tape libraries. They are also available in silos and in rack-mounted configurations. The encryption solutions vary depending upon the location of the drives. Table 4-15 shows the encryption options available for the TS1120 and TS1130 in open systems environments.

Table 4-15 Open-systems-attached TS1120 and TS130 encryption solution options

Open-systems-attached IBM tape library	Open-systems-attached rack or silo		
AME (Tivoli Storage Manager only)	AME (Tivoli Storage Manager only)		
SME (AIX, Solaris, Windows, or Linux only)	SME (AIX, Solaris, Windows, or Linux only)		
LME (TS3500 or TS3400 tape library)			

Additional information about TS1120 and TS1130 tape drives is in the announcement letter.

4.6.8 IBM LTO4 and LTO5 tape drive supported platforms

The IBM LTO4 tape drive is supported in a wide range of open systems environments:

- ► IBM System i
- IBM System p
- IBM System x
- Sun Solaris servers
- Hewlett-Packard servers
- Linux-based servers
- Intel-compatible servers, Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008

Encryption-capable LTO4 or LTO5 tape drives are available in the TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape libraries and the TS2900 tape autoloader. They are also available as a drive only with the TS2340 and TS2240. Table 4-16 shows the encryption options available for these environments.

Table 4-16 Open-systems-attached LTO4 and LTO5 encryption solution options

Open-systems-attached in IBM tape library	Open-systems-attached TS2340 drive
AME (Tivoli Storage Manager only)	AME (Tivoli Storage Manager only)
SME (AIX, Solaris, Windows, or Linux only)	SME (AIX, Solaris, Windows, or Linux only)
LME (TS3500, TS3310, TS3200, TS3100 tape libraries and TS2900 tape autoloader) ^a	

a. TS3310, TS3200, TS3100, and TS2900 do not support the Barcode Encryption Policy of LME. LME on the TS3310, TS3200, TS3100, TS2900 is all or nothing (entire partition or not).

For more information:

- Information about the LTO4 or LTO5 tape drive is in the announcement letter.
- Obtain an update of the open systems device drivers through anonymous FTP from: ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

Look under the specific directory that reflects your operating system environment.

Refer to IBM Tape Device Driver Installation and User's Guide, GC27-2130, available at: ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/devdrvr/

4.7 Other planning considerations for tape data encryption

In this section, we describe other planning considerations for you to evaluate before implementing tape data encryption. You must consider many factors when you plan how to set up your encryption strategy.

4.7.1 Performance considerations

Unlike software encryption or encryption appliances, the TS1130, TS1120, LTO5 or the LTO4 encryption solutions can encrypt data with minimal data transfer performance impact and without requiring additional equipment in the computing environment. You might be concerned that encryption will impact the data transfer performance of your applications or backup processing. Extensive testing shows little degradation to data transfer performance with encryption-enabled drives. The data rate claims of the drive remain unchanged.

With encryption enabled, when writing from loadpoint, the access time of the first write from the beginning of tape increases because of the time needed to retrieve, read, and write the encryption keys. Reading an encrypted cartridge also increases the mount time because of the time necessary to retrieve the encryption keys.

4.7.2 Encryption with other backup applications

All backup applications currently supported on any of the IBM tape libraries can support library-managed encryption because the application is not involved in the encryption process. Applications include, for example Symantec NetBackup, EMC NetWorker, CommVault Galaxy, and BakBone NetVault.

4.7.3 ALMS and encryption in the TS3500 library

The Advanced Library Management System (ALMS) is required in a TS3500 with TS1130 drives.

Although the ALMS is not required for encryption in a TS3500 with TS1120, LTO5 or LTO4 drives, best practices suggest using it. Encryption in a TS3500 tape library with ALMS is configured by the logical library. Encryption in a TS3500 tape library without ALMS is configured by the physical library.

TS3500 ALMS encryption rules

For NON-ALMS TS3500 libraries, we enforce homogeneous encryption rules for TS1120 and earlier 3592 and all LTO drives, separately by drive type. The drive type is defined as 3592 or LTO. ALMS is *required* for TS1130 drives. This section discusses the rules. For more information see *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library Advanced Library Management System (ALMS) and Encryption*, available at:

http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atsmastr.nsf/WebIndex/WP101038

Rule 1: TS3500 non-ALMS, TS1120 drives only library

All 3592 drives in the entire library must be encryption-capable for encryption to be enabled. The entire physical library (all logical libraries if partitioned) must consist of encryption-capable TS1120 (3592-E05) drives. If encryption is to be enabled, it must be enabled for all drives in the entire physical library, and the drives must all be managed in the same manner, that is, all LME, all SME, or all AME.

Rule 2: TS3500 non-ALMS, LTO drives only library

The entire physical library (all logical libraries if partitioned) must consist of LTO4 or LTO5 drives before encryption can be enabled. No LTO 1, LTO 2, or LTO3 drives are allowed in the entire physical library. If the library is partitioned, all logical libraries must have encryption enabled in the same manner, that is, all LME, all SME, or all AME.

Rule 3: TS3500 non-ALMS, mixed TS1120 and LTO drives

In this environment, both drive types (LTO and 3592) are to be encryption-enabled. For non-ALMS TS3500 libraries, we enforce homogeneous encryption rules for all 3592 and all LTO drives, separately by drive type.

If you intend to enable encryption for both LTO and 3592, you must adhere to rules 1 and 2 with the following exceptions:

- All LTO logical libraries must be managed in the same manner, that is, SME, LME, and AME.
- All 3592 logical libraries must be managed in the same manner, that is, SME, LME, and AME.

However, LTO and 3592 tape drives can be managed differently. For example, all LTO drives can be LME and all 3592 drives can be SME or all AME.

Rule 3A: TS3500 non-ALMS, mixed 3592 and LTO drives

In this environment, only LTO or only TS1120 intend to have encryption enabled.

You have to adhere to the rules only if you intend to enable encryption for that drive type. If you intend to enable 3592 encryption only and not LTO encryption, you only have to adhere to rule 1. If you intend to enable LTO encryption only and not 3592 encryption, you have to adhere only to rule 2.

Rule 4: TS3500 ALMS-enabled, 3592 drives only library

With ALMS enabled, all drives in the physical library do not need to be encryption-capable. That is, the physical library can consist of both encryption-capable and 3592 drives that are not encryption-capable.

All drives in the logical library must be encryption-capable if using LME or AME. All drives in a SME-managed logical library do *not* need to be encryption-capable.

Rule 5: TS3500 ALMS-enabled, LTO drives only library

With ALMS enabled, all LTO drives (in the physical library *or* in the logical library) do not need to be encryption-capable for encryption to be enabled. For example, a logical library can consist of LTO5, LTO4, LTO2, and LTO3 drives, and yet the LTO4 or LTO5 drives can be encryption-enabled using SME, LME, and AME.

Rule 5A: TS3500 ALMS-enabled, mixed 3592 and LTO drives

You only need to adhere to rules 4 and 5 if you intend to enable encryption for that drive type. If you intend to enable 3592 encryption only and not LTO encryption, only rule 4 applies. If you intend to enable LTO encryption only and not 3592 encryption, only rule 5 applies. If you intend to implement encryption on both 3592 and LTO, rules 4 and 5 both apply.

Note: ALMS is required with new TS3500 installations, when TS1130 tape drives are installed in the library, or when a TS7700 is attached to the TS3500.

In summary:

On an existing TS3500 library without ALMS

Without ALMS, implementing encryption on an existing library is very inflexible. It also can be costly because older technology cannot coexist with newer encryption-capable technology.

On a newly ordered library without ALMS

Without ALMS, implementing encryption is more difficult to manage and not very flexible. This environment is useful only if you intend to implement encryption on a new library that will not change over time. All logical libraries require the same encryption method, which makes management an issue when you have to create non-encrypted cartridges.

On a new or existing TS3500 library with ALMS

With ALMS, implementing encryption is easily managed, flexible, and much more cost-effective, regardless of your library configuration. This environment is cost-effective because older technology can coexist in the same physical library with newer encryption-capable technology. Management is much easier because multiple encryption methods can be used within the same library. This environment is more flexible because a logical partition can consist of both old and new encryption-capable technology.

On 29 August 2006, IBM announced entry and intermediate-priced offerings of ALMS that mesh with existing Capacity on Demand (CoD) library features. This announcement provides full ALMS functionality for smaller libraries at a lower entry fee and lessens the impact of cost as a barrier.

4.7.4 TS1120 and TS1130 rekeying considerations

You also have to consider rekeying requirements in your planning. Rekeying can be required as part of sharing the same tape with your business partners.

It can also be a requirement if you have certificates or private keys that you expect have been compromised. This compromise is analogous to losing your house keys and then calling a locksmith to rekey all of the locks in your house. Then, the lost keys cannot be used to get into your house.

We consider the business partner situation first. If you plan to share the same information with multiple business partners, you have additional planning considerations. If you share information today by sending multiple tapes at the same time, you can continue to do that, but you have to write the tapes for each business partner using the individual business partner's unique public key (TS1120 and TS1130).

If you pass the same tape from one business partner to another business partner, you have to consider certain changes if you encrypt that tape and do not want to share your private key. The tape going to Business Partner A needs to be written using Business Partner A's public key. When Business Partner A finishes with the tape, they need to send the tape back to you. At this point, you have two options. You can use the rekeying function to rewrite just the key labels on the tape. Rekeying allows you to change the public key alias label used from business partner A's public key to business partner B's public key without having to rewrite the complete data portion of the tape.

The approach for compromised certificates is similar. You use rekeying to make the tape unreadable by anyone possessing the compromised certificate or private key.

5

Planning for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V2

In this chapter we discuss the planning considerations for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) Version 2. TKLM must be implemented before you can encrypt any tape using system-managed encryption (SME) or library-managed encryption (LME). Application-managed encryption (AME) does not require a TKLM implementation. This planning can occur even before your hardware arrives.

Chapter 9, "Administration" on page 161 completely describes the implementation of TKLM.

You must decide on what platform (or platforms) the TKLM will run. We suggest that you implement TKLM only on a single operating system type to allow TKLM synchronization between primary and secondary TKLM instances.

Topics covered in this chapter are:

- ► Planning the TKLM v2 installation, complete hardware and software requirements
- Migration planning, requirements and restrictions migrating from EKM or TKLM v1
- Suggested best practices

5.1 Planning the TKLM v2 installation

Before installing Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager v2 the following steps should be performed:

- ► Determine the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager topology.
- ► Ensure that the system meets hardware requirements.
- Ensure that the operating system is at the correct level, with all the required patches in place on required operating system versions.
- Ensure that kernel settings are correct for those operating systems, such as the Solaris operating system, that require updating.
- If you intend to use your own previously installed version of DB2, ensure that it is at the required software level.
- Decide whether you want to migrate the configuration from an earlier version of Encryption Key Manager.

Note: On distributed systems, the only opportunity to migrate an Encryption Key Manager configuration to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager is during installation.

On distributed systems, decide what installation mode you want to use to install Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager: graphical mode, console mode, or silent mode.

5.1.1 Hardware requirements for open systems

Ensure that the computer has the required memory, speed, and available disk space to meet the workload. Table 5-1 lists the minimum and typical hardware configuration for running TKLM v2.

System components	Minimum values*	Typical values**
System memory (RAM)	2 GB	4 GB
Processor speed	 For Linux and Windows systems: 2.66 GHz single processor For AIX and Sun Solaris systems: 1.5 GHz (2–way) 	 For Linux and Windows systems: 3.0 GHz dual processors For AIX and Sun Solaris systems: 1.5 GHz (4–way)
Disk space free for product and prerequisite products such as DB2 and keystore files	3.5 GB	5 GB
Disk space free in /tmp or C:\temp	2 GB	2 GB
Disk space free in /opt	600 MB	1 GB
Disk space free in /usr (AIX)	600 MB***	2 GB***
Disk space free in /home directory for DB2	1.8 GB	2.8 GB

Table 5-1 TKLM v2 Hardware requirements

All file systems must be writable.

* Minimum values: These values enable a basic use of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.

** Typical values: You might need to use larger values that are appropriate for your production environment. The most critical requirements are to provide adequate system memory, and free disk and swap space. Processor speed is less important.

*** Approximate value.

5.1.2 Software requirements

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager uses several support and middleware programs, including:

- Java Runtime Environment (JRE)
- Database authority DB2
- Tivoli Integrated Portal (TIP)
- A supported browser, which is not included with the product installation

Note: On open systems, Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager installs the middleware that it uses. If you have DB2 already installed on the system, see "Database authority and requirements" on page 95 for details.

Table 5-2 lists the current platforms on which TKLM v2 can be installed.

Table 5-2 TKLM v2 Software Platforms

Operating system		Use DB2 Workgroup Server Edition	
	Version 9.5	Version 9.7	
AIX Version 5.3 64–bit and Version 6.1 (POWER7™ servers are not supported).		YES	
For both versions, a 64-bit AIX kernel is required.			
For Version 5.3, use Technology Level 9 and Service Pack 2. The minimum C++ runtime level requires the xIC.rte 9.0.0.8 and xIC.aix50.rte 9.0.0.8 (or later) filesets. These filesets are included in the June 2008 IBM C++ Runtime Environment Components for AIX package.			
For Version 6.1, use AIX 6.1 Technology Level 2. The minimum C++ runtime level requires the xIC.rte 9.0.0.8 and xIC.aix61.rte 9.0.0.8 (or later) filesets. These filesets are included in the June 2008 IBM C++ Runtime Environment Components for AIX package.			
Sun Server Solaris 9 (SPARC 64–bit)		YES	
Apply patches 111711-12 and 111712-12; if raw devices are used, apply patch 122300-11. Note: Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager runs in a 32-bit JVM.			
Sun Server Solaris 10 (SPARC 64–bit)		YES	
If raw devices are used, apply patch 125100-07. Note: Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager runs in a 32-bit JVM.			
 Windows Server 2003 R2 (all Intel and AMD processors) for: Standard Edition Enterprise Edition Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager can run on a member server in a domain controller environment, but is not supported on a primary or backup domain controller. 		YES	
 Windows Server 2008 (64-bit in 32-bit mode application for all Intel and AMD processors) including: Standard Edition Enterprise Edition 		YES	
 Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit for all Intel and AMD processors) including: Standard Edition Enterprise Edition 		YES	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS Version 4.0 on x86 32-bit	YES		

Operating system	Use DB2 Workgroup Server Edition	
	Version 9.5	Version 9.7
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Version 5.0 update 2 on x86 32–bit and also 64-bit in 32-bit mode application		YES
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server Version 9 on x86 (32-bit)	YES	
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server Version 10 Service Pack 2 on x86 (32–bit and 64-bit in 32-bit mode application) and Version 11 (32–bit and 64-bit)		YES

Linux packages

On Linux platforms, Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requires the compat-libstdc++-33-3.2.3-61 or later package. It also requires the libaio package, which contains the asynchronous library required for DB2 database servers.

To determine if you have the compat-libstdc++ package, run this command:

```
rpm -qa | grep -i "libstdc"
```

If the package is not installed, locate the rpm file on your original installation media and install it:

```
find installation_media -name compat-libstdc++*
rpm -ivh full_path_to_compat-libstdc++_rpm_file
```

► To determine if you have the libaio package, run this command:

rpm -qa | grep -i "libaio"

If the package is not installed, locate the rpm file on your original installation media and install it:

```
find installation_media -name libaio*
rpm -ivh full path to libaio rpm file
```

Disabling Security Enhanced Linux

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager problems occur on Linux operating systems if the Security Enhanced Linux (SELINUX) setting is enabled.

For example, a problem might occur with TCP/IP connections on Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server ports. To disable Security Enhanced Linux, take these steps after you install the Linux operating system:

- 1. Edit the /etc/selinux/config file and set SELINUX=disabled.
- 2. Install Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.
- 3. Install the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Fix Pack.

For more information about obtaining fix packs, see

http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/support/keylifecycle-mgr/

Java Runtime Environment (JRE) requirements

The Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requirement for a version of Java Runtime Environment depends on which operating system is used.

On distributed systems IBM Java Runtime Environment is included with embedded WebSphere Application Server.

Database authority and requirements

The Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requirement for a database depends on which operating system is used.

Open systems:

DB2 Workgroup Server Edition on the same computer on which the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server runs:

- Version 9.5 with Fix Pack 4 on SuSE Linux Enterprise Server Version 9 and on Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS Version 4.0.
- Version 9.7 with Fix Pack 2 on other distributed operating systems that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager supports.

Note: You must use Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager to manage the database. To avoid data synchronization problems, do not use tools that the database application might provide.

For more information about DB2 prerequisites, see:

http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/9/sysreqs.html

DB2 kernel settings

Ensure that kernel settings are correct for those operating systems, such as the Solaris operating system, that require updating.

Before installing the application, see the DB2 documentation on these websites for additional kernel settings:

- AIX systems:
 - None required.
- Linux systems:
 - Modifying kernel parameters for DB2 Workgroup Server Edition Version 9.5 on SuSE Linux Enterprise Server Version 9 and Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS Version 4.0

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9r5/topic/com.ibm.db2.luw.q b.server.doc/doc/t0008238.html

 Modifying kernel parameters for DB2 Workgroup Server Edition Version 9.7 on other supported Linux systems

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9r7/index.jsp?topic=/com.ib m.db2.luw.qb.server.doc/doc/t0008238.html

Solaris systems:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9/topic/com.ibm.db2.udb.upr un.doc/doc/t0006476.htm

- Window systems:
 - None required.

Runtime environment requirements

The Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requirement for a runtime environment depends on which operating system is used.

- On distributed systems:
 - Embedded WebSphere Application Server 6.1.0.29 and any applicable fix pack or APAR requirements.

Note: WebSphere Application Server Version 6.1 is not supported.

Tivoli Integrated Portal requirement

The requirement for a version of Tivoli Integrated Portal depends on which operating system or required prerequisite Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager is used.

Distributed systems: Tivoli Integrated Portal Version 1.1.1.11

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager includes and installs Tivoli Integrated Portal. During installation, Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager makes modifications to Tivoli Integrated Portal that might cause problems with products that use the same Tivoli Integrated Portal when you uninstall Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager. To avoid these issues:

- Do not install Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager in another product's instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal.
- Do not install another product in the instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager provides.

Browser requirements

Table 5-3 lists the browsers and browser versions that are supported by Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.

Session cookies and JavaScript must be enabled in the browser to establish a session with Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.

Supported browsers are not included with the product installation. Except for AIX systems, a browser can be deployed on the same computer on which Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager runs or on a different one. There are no supported browsers that run on AIX systems.

Table 5-3	Supported browsers
-----------	--------------------

Browser	AIX	Sun Server Solaris (SPARC)	Windows Server 2003, R2 and 2008	Windows Server 2008, R2	Red Hat Enterprise Linux	SuSE Linux Enterprise Server
Microsoft Internet Explorer, Version 7.0	Deploy a remote		YES			
Microsoft Internet Explorer, Version 8.0 in compatibility mode	browser on a separate computer.		YES	YES		
Firefox Version 3.0.x Note: Version 3.5 and above are not supported.		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES

5.1.3 Keystore type and key size requirements

You must consider the requirements for a specific keystore type and key sizes before you install and configure Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.

Changing the keystore type after you install and configure Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager might require that you uninstall, and then reinstall and reconfigure Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager. Ensure that you back up all keys before performing this task.

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager supports only the JCEKS keystore type (JCE software provider). Use this keystore type if you are using only Java software. Ensure that the flat file JCEKS keystore will reside in a restricted area of the file system on the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager system. Use a JCEKS keystore for all distributed operating systems.

Table 5-4 provides details about the TKLM-supported keystore.

Table 5-4 Keystore types

Keystore	Operating system	3592, DS8000® (store keypairs and certificates)	LTO (store symmetrickeys)	DS5000 (store symmetric keys)	3592, DS8000, LTO
JCEKS	all	YES	YES	YES	YES

Supported key sizes and import and export restrictions

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager can serve either 2048- or 1024-bit keys to devices. Older keys that were generated as 1024-bit keys can continue to be used.

Table 5-5 lists the supported key sizes for the keystore type that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager supports.

Table 5-5 Supported key sizes and keystore types

Keystore type	Import PKCS12 file	Export PKCS12 file	Key generation size in bits
JCEKS	YES	YES	2048

DB2 planning

You must consider whether to use an existing copy of DB2 Workgroup Server Edition, or use the DB2 version and fix pack that the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager installation program provides for distributed systems. An existing DB2 must be locally installed on the system and not on a network or shared drive.

Use Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager to manage the DB2 database.

The following minimum DB2 Workgroup Server Edition levels are required on the same computer on which the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server runs:

- Version 9.5 with Fix Pack 4 on SuSE Linux Enterprise Server Version 9 and on Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS Version 4.0.
- Version 9.7 with Fix Pack 2 on other distributed operating systems that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager supports.

Note: You must use Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager to manage the database. To avoid data synchronization problems, do not use tools that the database application might provide.

For more information about database requirements, see the *IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Installation and Configuration Guide.*

Migration planning

Before you install Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager at this version, determine whether you need to migrate a previous version of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager, or previous configuration data from the IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Tivoli Platform.

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1

Installing Version 2 of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager detects an earlier version of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager, automatically migrates its data, and then removes the earlier version.

A failed migration of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1 retains a record of successful migration steps. Running the migration recovery script starts at the point in the migration process where the error occurred.

Encryption Key Manager Version 2.1

Migration is enabled for Version 2.1, but not for earlier versions of Encryption Key Manager. The only opportunity to migrate the configuration is during the installation of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager, or immediately afterward, before you change the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager configuration.

If Encryption Key Manager Version 2.1 migration fails, no data is migrated to the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager database. Any changes that might have been made are reversed.

You can manually run the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 2 migration utility from the TKLM_HOME\migration\bin directory as follows:

- Run migrate.bat to migrate Encryption Key Manager Version 2.1 to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.
- ► Run migratetk1m.bat to migrate Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1 to Version 2.

Note: Do not run other *.bat utilities that you might see in this directory. The utilities are for use only by the automatic installation process.

Certificate requirement to encrypt data (TS1120 and TS1130)

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requires at least one X.509 digital certificate, containing a public/private key pair, to protect the data encryption key that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server creates when encrypting data.

Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager allows for two digital certificate aliases to be defined per write request. One of the two aliases (labels) specified must have a private key in the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager keystore when the tape is created. This guarantees that the creator of the tape will be able to read the tape. The other alias (label) could be a public key from a partner, which the partner will be able to decrypt with its private key. In order to read an encrypted tape, the correct private key is needed.

There are two methods of setting up digital certificates:

- Create your own public/private key pair and corresponding certificate to be used to write and encrypt to tape so that you can read and decrypt the data at a later date.
- Obtain a public key and corresponding certificate from a partner, to be used to write and encrypt tapes that can be read and decrypted by your partner.

5.2 Before you migrate

Before you begin, ensure that your enterprise allows a time interval for a temporary halt to key serving activity.

A window of time for testing is also required to ensure that the new Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager has the expected keys and other configuration attributes that you intended to migrate.

Complete these preliminary tasks:

- Determine whether a large quantity of data requires migration. Migrating an existing database can require up to four times the current disk space usage during the migration activity. Most of this disk space is released after migration succeeds. You might also have to change the memory settings that are described in 5.1.1, "Hardware requirements for open systems" on page 92.
- Encryption Key Manager
 - The Encryption Key Manager configuration must be correct and must be a working configuration.
 - Before you migrate, refresh and stop the Encryption Key Manager server to ensure that there is no data loss.
 - Back up the server that has the configuration data that you intend to migrate. Migrated data includes:
 - A configuration properties file
 - Keys and certificates that are referenced by the configuration properties file.
 - Drive tables
 - An optional metadata file pointed at by the configuration properties file
 - An optional key groups file
 - Stop Encryption Key Manager. Key serving cannot be active during migration.
- Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1
 - Ensure that you applied the most current fix pack for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.
 - Verify that you have a functioning Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1 system that has a configured keystore. Migration fails if a keystore is not configured.
 - Ensure that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1 is using DB2 Version 9.1 with Fix Pack 4. For more Version 1 information, refer to the IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Information Center.
 - Back up the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server. Also back up any replica. If migration fails, you might need to restore Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1 from a backup copy.

Note: After you successfully migrate Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager to Version 2, previous Version 1 backup files cannot be used to restore Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager at Version 2.

- Migration does not remove the Version 1 backup directory when the Version 2 installation process removes Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1. However, if the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 1 backup directory is a subfolder in the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server directory path, uninstalling Tivoli Integrated Portal also removes the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager backup directory.
- Migration removes the contents of the TKLM_HOME directory but does not migrate or remove the Version 1 audit log file.
- Stop Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager and any replica server. Key serving cannot be active during migration.
- Migration does not allow passwords with special characters for the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager database or for Tivoli Integrated Portal Server. Only the alphabetical characters (A-Z and a-z), numeric characters (0-9), the underscore (_), and hyphen (-) are allowed. If you modified a password earlier, you must change the password before

migration to use only the character set that migration allows. After migration, you can reset the password to use special characters.

- During migration, examine the TKLM_HOME\migration\migrate.log file frequently to determine how far migration has progressed. Running the migration utility if migration fails will print messages to the migrate.log file and to the command line interface output.
- To avoid errors while migration is in progress, do not start or stop the DB2 server or the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server outside of the migration process.

Note: Do not interrupt the migration process.

5.2.1 Migration requirements for Encryption Key Manager

There are certain requirements before you can migrate from Encryption Key Manager to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager. You can migrate only Version 2.1 of Encryption Key Manager.

Requirements include:

- Migrate only one Encryption Key Manager server to one Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server. To migrate a second Encryption Key Manager use a second Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server.
- Both the Encryption Key Manager server and the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server that receives migrated data must be on the same host. After migration, the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server uses the keystore, TCP port, and SSL port that the Encryption Key Manager server previously used.
- Two properties are required for migration:
 - config.keystore.file
 - TransportListener.ssl.keystore.name
- To migrate keygroups, if your Encryption Key Manager was configured with keygroups to work with LTO tape drives, ensure that the config.keygroup.xml.file property exists in the Encryption Key Manager properties file and is specified as an absolute path. This property might not be in the properties file because Encryption Key Manager might have been using the file from a default directory from which the Encryption Key Manager was launched.

5.2.2 Migration restrictions for Encryption Key Manager

There are certain restrictions on what you can migrate from Encryption Key Manager:

- Migration of Administrator SSL keystores and truststores is not supported. Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server does not support Administrator sync capability.
- Migration of PKCS11Impl keystores and truststores is not supported. Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server does not support PKCS11Impl keystores.
- Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager does not support the use of a key in multiple groups, unlike Encryption Key Manager, which allows the use of a key in multiple groups.

When you migrate key data in KeyGroup.xml from Encryption Key Manager to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager, each key is attached to one group. A key that was previously in multiple groups in Encryption Key Manager is created in only one group in Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.

The migration process logs the event that the key is not created in multiple groups, and continues. If the symmetricKeySet property specifies a list or range or keys, and not a group, all keys specified by symmetricKeySet are migrated into a key group named DefaultMigrateGroup. If the keys from symmetricKeySet have been created as a part of other groups, and the key group named DefaultMigrateGroup is empty, Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager does not create the DefaultMigrateGroup key group and also does not migrate the symmetricKeySet property.

To work around the problem, use the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager graphical or command line interface to define a default key group, for example, for LTO tape drives.

5.2.3 Migration methods

There are two basic approaches to migrating your primary and secondary EKMs to TKLM. The two approaches are diagramed in Figure 5-1.

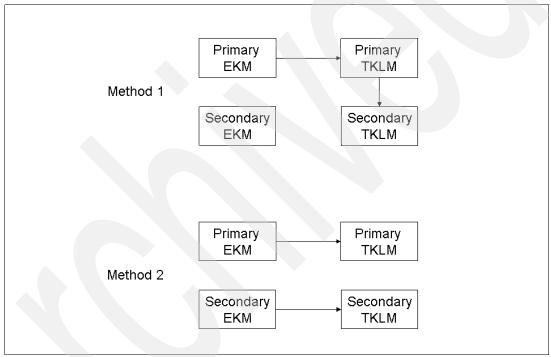


Figure 5-1 Approaches to migrating

Method 1 does a migration to create the Primary TKLM, and then uses TKLM native backup / restore to create the Secondary TKLM. Method 2 does two migrations.

Both of these methods will work. They will both get the systems migrated to TKLM. If the real intent is to keep these 2 TKLMs in sync, then it makes more sense to go with Method 1, assuming the 2 systems are running the same OS. In keeping the 2 systems in sync, you will be using backup/restore from the primary to the secondary.

One case where you might choose Method 2 is if there is unique data (drives or keys) that the customer cannot lose. Another is if the 2 TKLMs are running on 2 different OS's.

5.3 Suggested best practices

Planning for an encryption key server such as Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager must consider site working practices that might range from first-time implementation to well-established practices. The following best practices can help you successfully plan and implement an encryption key server:

Self-signed certificates

Use self-signed certificates for internal production and test purposes within a company.

CA-issued certificates

For a production environment normally only used for secure external data exchanges.

Frequency of certificate replacement

On a quarterly basis, site replaces certificates that are used to create new cartridges.

Minimum number of CA-issued certificates

One certificate is the minimum, and assumes the certificate is used both as the default and partner certificate.

Remote sites

One or more remote sites exist, and Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager serves keys to the remote sites.

Number of compromised certificates that occur annually

Zero certificates are compromised.

Mandatory failover requirement

A very large percentage of sites require that a backup encryption key server be running at all times at another site. The primary site makes a backup of keystore and Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager metadata whenever the data changes. Additionally, backed-up data is dependably restored to the offsite replica Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server for use in the event of a failover.

Selectively encrypt or encrypt all data.

You must consider whether to selectively encrypt or encrypt all data except the keystore, and recovery issues that might arise. A large percentage of sites encrypt all data, except the keystore and other backup data.

Backup files

For more information, see administration topics on backup and restore.

Self-signed certificates

You must consider how to balance the availability of self-signed certificates against the security needs of your enterprise.

Determine your organization's policy on the use of self-signed certificates and those issued by a Certificate Authority (CA). You might need to create self-signed certificates for the test phase of your project. In advance, you might also request certificates from a Certificate Authority for the production phase.

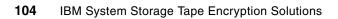
Security for sensitive information

You might need to ensure that only authorized persons can gain access to sensitive information for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager keys and certificates, and metadata in the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager database.

Sites vary in their separation of duties, and might have no separation of duties. However, for greater security, a site might take steps similar to these:

- One person administers the keystore. The site additionally keeps the keystore secure by assigning certificate acquisition from a Certificate Authority to a person in a separate group, such as the Security department. A user ID and password at the site additionally ensures that access to the file-based keystore is secure.
- A second person provides runtime system administrator support for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server. The site has a system administrator to run the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server.
- A different person serves as database administrator, with restricted access to the DB2 user ID and database instance that Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager uses.

Note: Although IBM has services that can help you to recover data from a damaged tape, if the damaged tape is encrypted, what you receive from the recovery will still be encrypted data. So, if you lose your keys, you have lost your data.



TKLM Windows installation

This chapter shows a step-by-step procedure for installing TKLM on a Windows server.

6.1 TKLM Windows installation

The server operating system for this installation is Windows Server 2008 Enterprise Edition Service Pack 1.

 Follow the instructions accompanying your media to start TKLM v2 Windows installation. The first screen ask for a language selection (Figure 6-10). Make your choice in drop-down box and click **OK**.



Figure 6-1 TKLM_v2_start

2. A wizard will guide you through the rest of TKLM v2 installation (Figure 6-2). Click Next.

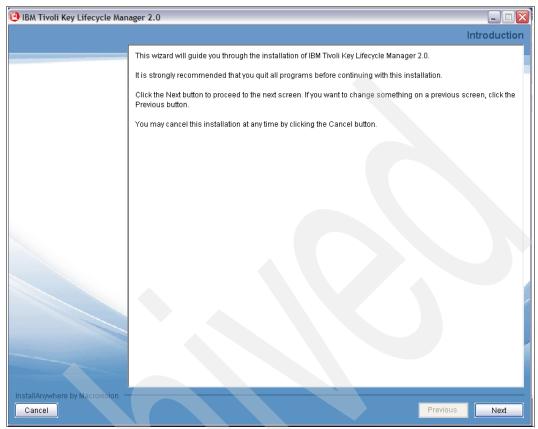


Figure 6-2 TKLM_v2_wizard

3. The License agreement is displayed (Figure 6-3). Click to accept the license terms; click **Next**.

📋 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manage	er 2.0 📃 🖾
	Software License Agreement
	Please read the following license agreement carefully.
	International License Agreement for Early Release of Programs
	Part 1 - General Terms
	BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING, ACCESSING, CLICKING ON AN "ACCEPT" BUTTON, OR OTHERWISE USING THE PROGRAM, LICENSEE AGREES TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU ARE ACCEPTING THESE TERMS ON BEHALF OF LICENSEE, YOU REPRESENT AND WARRANT THAT YOU HAVE FULL AUTHORITY TO BIND LICENSEE TO THESE TERMS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THESE TERMS,
	* DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, COPY, ACCESS, CLICK ON AN "ACCEPT" BUTTON, OR USE THE PROGRAM; AND
	* PROMPTLY RETURN THE UNUSED MEDIA, AND DOCUMENTATION, TO IBM. IF THE PROGRAM WAS DOWNLOADED, DESTROY ALL COPIES OF THE PROGRAM.
	1. Definitions
	"Authorized Use" - the specified level at which Licensee is authorized to execute or run the Program. That level may be measured by number of users, millions of service units ("MSUs"), Processor Value Units ("PVUs"), or other level of use specified by IBM in the "License Information" (see below).
	"Early Release" - a release of a Program for purposes of testing prior to it baing words commercially evolution to that you still be under development and I accept the terms in the license agreement.
	C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision – Cancel	Previous

Figure 6-3 TKLM_v2_license

4. The default DB2 directory path is shown on the Select DB2 Destination screen. You can keep the default, enter a different path, or select to use the path from a previous installation (Figure 6-4). Click **Next**.

🕘 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Ma	nager 2.0
	Select DB2 Dest
	Enter the DB2 installation directory or choose an existing DB2 copy to use with Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.
	● Install DB2
	Path
	C/IProgram Files/IBM/db2tk/mV2
	Reuse existing DB2 copy

Figure 6-4 TKLM_v2_DB2_path

5. The DB2 configuration options screen is displayed. Enter the appropriate information in all required fields (Figure 6-5). Click **Next**.

🕑 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Man	ager 2.0	2
	IBM DB2 Configuration Options	;
	Enter the following information and then click Next to continue.	
	DB2 Administrator ID ItkImdb2 DB2 Administrator Password Confirm Password Administrator / Database Home C: Database Name ItkImdb	
	DB2 Port 50010	

Figure 6-5 TKLM_v2_DB2_pw

6. A summary of your entries is displayed (Figure 6-6). Verify that the entries are correct and click **Next**.



Figure 6-6 TKLM_v2_review

7. TKLM v2 installation begins (Figure 6-7). *Do not touch the keyboard or mouse* during this process; wait for the next prompt.

🕲 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	
Please	Wait
IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	
CTGKM9033I. Installing the middleware. This could take several minutes to complete.	
	1
	-

Figure 6-7 TKLM_v2_inst

8. The installation process continues with creation of a database (Figure 6-8).

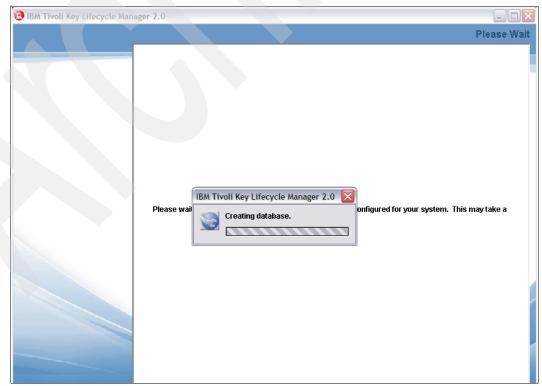


Figure 6-8 TKLM_v2_create_DB

9. The next screen indicates that DB2 installation is complete and that TKLM installation will take place (Figure 6-9). Click **Next**.

🕑 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Man	ager 2.0
	Transitioning to Install Phase
	Transitioning to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Install Phase
	DB2 installation has completed. Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager installation will commence now. To uninstall DB2 and any associated DB2 instances for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager use the native product tools. You can also use the native tools to modify DB2 passwords to use characters that the installer does not permit.

Figure 6-9 TKLM_v2_inst_start

10.A complete installation path is required for TKLM and TIP installation files. Make the appropriate selection and click **Next** (Figure 6-10).

🕑 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Man	ager 2.0
	Select Installation Directory
	Select a destination folder for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager and Tivoli Integrated Portal.
	Where would you like to install?
	C:\ibm\tivoli\tiptkImV2
	Restore Default Folder Choose

Figure 6-10 TKLM_v2_TIP_inst

11.A message on the next screen requests that you wait while TIP is being configured (Figure 6-11). Do not touch the keyboard or mouse, just wait for the next screen.

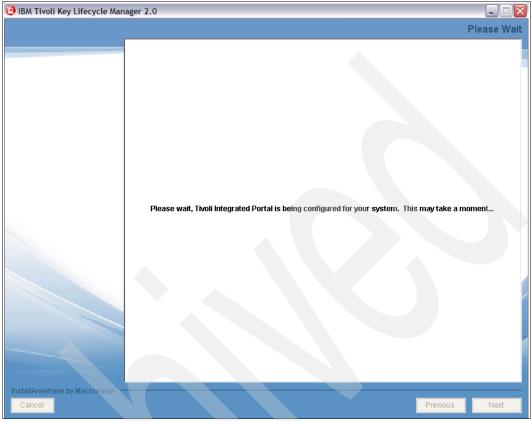


Figure 6-11 TKLM_v2_TIP_config

12.Credentials to create an application server profile are requested (Figure 6-12). Make your entries as desired and click **Next**.

🕑 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Man	ager 2.0
	WebSphere Information
	Provide the administrative user ID, password and default port used for creating an application server profile. The user id and password will be used to log into Tivoli Integrated Portal.
	User ID tipadmin
	Password
	Confirm Password
	Port Number
	16310

Figure 6-12 TKLM_v2_TIP_pw

Note: This will be your TIP ID and password to log in as TIPAdmin user.

See 9.1, "Role Based Access Control (RBAC)" on page 162 for a discussion about default Users and Groups created during installation.

13. The TKLMAdmin password is requested (Figure 6-13). Make your entries as desired and click **Next**.

🕑 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Mana	ager 2.0
	Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Administrator
	Enter the password for the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Administrator ID (TKLMAdmin). The TKLMAdmin user ID should be used to log into the Tivoli Integrated Portal to administer Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.
	Password Confirm Password

Figure 6-13 TKLMAdmin_pw

Note: This password will be used to log in as TKLMAdmin to access all TKLM operations.

14. The next screen lets you specify, if you already have a property configuration file, whether you want to migrate it to this new TKLM installation. Click the Migrate box and provide the existing EKM property file path if you want the file migrated; otherwise, just click **Next**.

🕑 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Man	ager 2.0
	Encryption Key Manager Migration
	To migrate an existing Encryption Key Manager configuration to a new Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager configuration you must check the Migrate checkbox and enter the full path to a valid KeyManagerConfig.properties file.
	Migrate Encryption Key Manager KeyManagerConfig.properties file selection.
	Encryption Key Manager PropFile C:\KeyManagerConfig properties Restore Default Choose

Figure 6-14 TKLM_v2_migrate

15.A summary with all applications and disk space usage is displayed before installation begins (Figure 6-15). Verify that the information is correct and click **Install**.

😕 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	
Pre-installation Sum	mary
Disk space information for installation target. Required disk space: 701 MB Available disk space: 15766 MB Please review your selection and click the Install button when you are ready. Embedded WebSphere Application Server Integrated Solutions Console CGI Server Tivoli Tome Scheduling Services Tivoli Common Reporting TIP Transformation Tivoli Integrated Portal Server Security Service Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Security Service TIP Dependency Management Start WebSphere Application Server Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Post Configuration Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Post Configuration for Tivoli Integrated Portal Stop WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server WebSphere Update Installer RegisterIUDD_3 RegisterIUDD_7 Tivoli Common Reporting Stop WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server	
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision Cancel Previous Inst	tall

Figure 6-15 TKLM_v2_disk_space

16.Installation of the Tivoli Integrated Portal (TIP) begins. The progress of the installation is displayed as shown in Figure 6-16. Do not touch the keyboard or mouse during this process; just leave it running,

The installation might take a while depending on the characteristics of your server. The green installation progression bar at the bottom of the screen lets you keep track of progress.

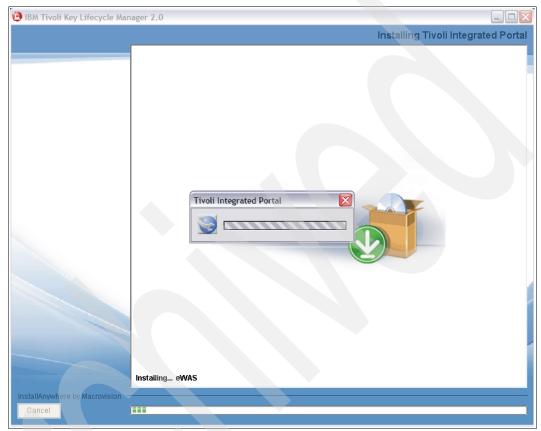


Figure 6-16 TKLM_v2_TIP

17. When installation is complete a success message is displayed (Figure 6-17). Click **Done** to quit the installer.

🙆 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	2.0	
	Install Complete	
	Congratulations. IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager has been successfully installed. The product has been installed to:	
	C:\ibm\tivoli\tiptklmV2	
	Press "Done" to quit the installer.	
	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager User Interface can be accessed with this URL:	
	http://win-dps4w8g65as:16310	
	Log into the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager User Interface from the Tivoli Integrated Portal using the TKLMAdmin user ID.	
		ľ
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision —		
Cancel	Previous	

Figure 6-17 TKLM_v2_inst_complete

18.TKLM uses the Firefox browser whenever your server is behind a firewall. The starting TKLM program will ask you to confirm that the connection is secure (Figure 6-18). Click I Understand the Risks to continue.

Q.	This Connection is Untrusted
	You have asked Firefox to connect securely to win-dps4w8g65as:16316 , but we can't confirm that your connection is secure.
	Normally, when you try to connect securely, sites will present trusted identification to prove that you are going to the right place. However, this site's identity can't be verified.
	What Should I Do?
	If you usually connect to this site without problems, this error could mean that someone is trying to impersonate the site, and you shouldn't continue.
	Get me out of here!
	Technical Details
	I Understand the Risks

Figure 6-18 TKLM_v2_conn_trust

19.A Security Exception window will be displayed, prompting you to confirm the security exception (Figure 6-19).

Add Security Exception		×
	ntifies this site. public sites will not ask you to do this.	
Server Location: https://win-dps4w8g65as:16316/ibm/	console <u>G</u> et Certificate	
Certificate Status This site attempts to identify itself with invalid infor Unknown Identity	mation.	
Certificate is not trusted, because it hasn't been vi	erified by a recognized authority.	
Permanently store this exception		
	Confirm Security Exception Cancel]

Figure 6-19 TKLM_v2_security

20. The Tivoli Integrated Portal login screen is displayed (Figure 6-20 on page 118). From this screen you can log into either TIPAdmin or TKLMAdmin, depending on what tasks you need to do.

Tivoli.	
	Tivoli Integrated Portal
	User ID: Password: Log in
IBM.	LICENSED MATERIALS PROPERTY OF IBM 5724-i63, 5724-H88, 5655-N01 (C) Copyright International Business Machines Corp. 2005, 2009 All Rights Reserved US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp. IBM is a registered trademark of the IBM Corp.

Figure 6-20 TKLM_v2_login

21. Enter the appropriate User ID and password and click Log in (Figure 6-21).

Tivoli.	
	Tivoli Integrated Portal
S.	User ID: TKLMAdmin Password: ••••••• Log in
IBM.	LICENSED MATERIALS PROPERTY OF IBM 5724-i63, 5724-H88, 5655-N01 (C) Copyright International Business Machines Corp. 2005, 2009 All Rights Reserved US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp. IBM is a registered trademark of the IBM Corp.

Figure 6-21 TKLM_v2_login_pw

22. The first time you log in you will be prompted to complete the initial TKLM configuration (Figure 6-22). Click **Create the Master Keystore** in the Action Items window.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • Welcome • • My Startup Pages • • Trivoli Key Lifecycle Manager • • Settings	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 ? _ % Action Items First, you must <u>alick here to create the master keystore</u> .

Figure 6-22 TKLM_v2_actions_start

23.A Keystore configuration panel is displayed (Figure 6-23). Fill in the required fields and click **OK**.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin
View: Alltasks ■ ■ Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings	Keystore Keystore One master keystore is used to hold all keys and certificates managed by Twoli Key Lifecycle Manager. Keystore type UCEKS UCEKS * Keystore path: C/Ubm/tivol/tiptk/mV2/products/kk/m/keystore * Keystore name: defaultKayStore * Password: * Retype password: * This value must not be less than 0 characters. CK
Figure 6-23 TKLM v2 Kovst	

24.A Keystore Created Successfully message is displayed (Figure 6-24). Click the **Next Steps** row to start TKLM configuration.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin
• •		
= Welcome = My Startup Pages	Keystore	
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Keystore	
• Settings	Keystore Created Successfully Keystore path Keystore name	C-\\bm\\\tivol\\tiplidm\\V2/products%tm\keystore\defaultKeyStore defaultKeyStore
	Password	weizelitzegotoie
	Retype password	NEEKEX
	Keystore type	JCEKS
	Next Steps Click here to configure the product to use specific communication pro	teco(s)

Figure 6-24 TKLM_v2_Keystore_created

25. The first TKLM configuration screen is displayed (Figure 6-25).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin Help Logout
+ -		Select Action
= Welcome = My Startup Pages	Configuration	
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings	Configuration	? _ C
- settings	SSL/KMIP	SSL/KMIP for Key Serving
	IKEv2-SCSI	Current SSLKMIP Server Certificate: None For secure communications between the Twoli Key Lifecycle Manager key server and devices, use an SSL/KMIP server certificate. Select
	Audit	the method of certificate creation and complete the fields below.
	Key Serving Ports	The client communication certificate may need to be imported into the trusted certificate list.
	Kay Serving Parameters	You may click on other tabs to access other configuration steps. When you have completed all configuration steps, select OK to complete your changes and exit configuration. C clease self-signed cantificate Request catification on this-party provider Use an existing certificate D to not add an SSURMIP server certificate at this time
	OK Cancel	

Figure 6-25 TKLM_v2_config

26. If you select **Create self-signed certificate**, a scroll down page prompts you to insert the Certificate label and description data, as shown in Figure 6-26. Make the appropriate entries and click **OK**.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin Help Log	pout IB)
• •		Se	elect Action
Welcome My Startup Pages Troidi Key Lifecycle Manager Settings	Configuration Configuration SSL/AMIP KK5/2-SCSI Audit Ksy Serving Parameters Ksy Serving Parameters Ksy Serving Parameters	The client communication certificate may need to be imported into the trusted certificate list. You may click on other tabs to access other configuration steps. When you have completed all configuration steps, select OK to complete your changes and exit configuration. C Create self-signed certificate Request certificate from a hird-party provider D to not add and a SULMMP server certificate at this time Self-signed certificate Use a satisf signed certificate in a known environment. A client cannot verify a self-signed certificate before accepting a connection. C Certificate description (common name): Self-signed certificate (in days; for example, 3 years is 365 x 3 = 1095 days): 105 O openal Certificate Parameters	? - 0

Figure 6-26 TKLM_v2_Certificate

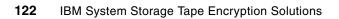
27. You are prompted to restart the server in order to update the configuration and have the changes become effective (Figure 6-27).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout
• •			Select A
 Welcome My Startup Pages 	Configuration		
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Configuration		
Settings	SSL/KMIP		
	Certificate label in keystore	itso.ssl	
	SSL/KMIP client device communication certificates	Not defined	
	IKEv2-SCSI Not configured		
	Not contigured		
	Audit		
	Audit level	Medium	
	Key Serving Ports		
	TCP port:	3801	
	TCP timeout (in minutes)	10	
	SSL port	441	
	SSL timeout (in minutes)	10	
	KMIP SSL port:	5696	
	Key Serving Parameters Do not use expired certificates for write requests or data writes.	Disabled	
	Keep pending client device communication certificates	Disabled	
	Identify certificates by certificate name.	Enabled	
	Enable 2/OS key and certificate compatibility.	Disabled	
	Next Steps		
	In order for the configuration to be updated, you must restart th Critical data has been added. Create a backup to ensure that y	e server.	
	Cinical data has been added. Create a backup to ensure that y	ou can restore this data.	
			-
	I		

Figure 6-27 TKLM_v2_config_end

The TKLM v2 Windows installation is finished.

Refer to 9.1, "Role Based Access Control (RBAC)" on page 162 to continue personalizing your configuration.



7

TKLM Linux installation

This chapter shows a step-by-step procedure for installing TKLM on Linux.

7.1 TKLM Linux installation

The server operating system for this installation is GNU/Linux 2.6.18-92.el5.

The TKLM must be installed as root. In our example we installed from a tar file. Follow your media instructions for starting the installation.

- 1. Create a tklm directory and copy the TKLM Linux installation file into it.
- 2. Extract the TKLM tar file by issuing the following command:

tar -zxpvf tklm_install_filename.tar.gz

Several folders are created.

Run the following command from the /root/tklm directory to start the graphical user interface (GUI) installation:

./install.sh

Figure 7-1 shows the GUI installation processes successfully ended.

				oot@	vegemite:~/tklm		
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iev	<u>T</u> erminal	Ta <u>b</u> s	<u>H</u> elp			
licen	s e/no tic	es.txt					-
licen	s e/e n.ht	ոլ					
	se/zh_T₩						
licen	se/ja.ht	ml					
	se/Lic_k						
	se/Lic_c						
	se/Lic_t						
	s e/ it.ht						
	s e/p l.ht						
	se/pt.ht						3
	_	h_TW.txt					
	se/Lic_e						
	se/Lic_e						
license/cs.html							
license/Lic_it.txt							
	se/de.ht						
	s e/fr .ht						
	se/Lic_d						
	se/tr.ht						
	e_res po n						
		se_tklm_mi	.grati	n.txt	t		
tklmt							_
	_	ponse.txt					=
[root	@vegemit	e tklm]#					-

Figure 7-1 GUI installation

4. Verify the default installation paths.

UNIX and Linux:TKLM:/opt/IBM/tiptkImV2DB2:/opt/IBM/db2tkImV2DB2 Instance Home:/home/tkImdb2 (AIX/Linux) or
/export/home/tkImdb2 (Solaris)

5. The first screen (Figure 7-2) prompts you to make a language choice. Make your selection in the box and click **OK**.



Figure 7-2 Language choice

6. A wizard guides you through TKLM v2 installation, as shown in Figure 7-3. Click Next.

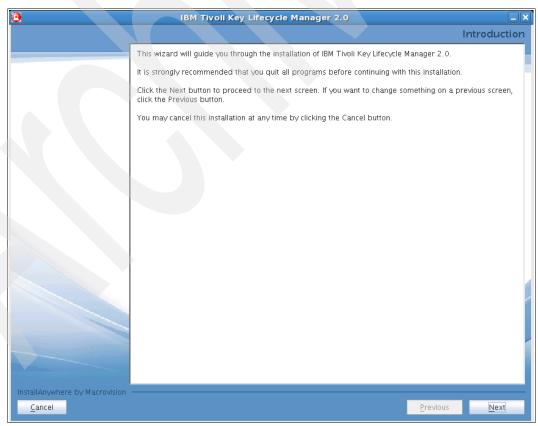


Figure 7-3 TKLM wizard

7. The software license agreement is displayed. Click I accept the terms in the license agreement to proceed. Click Next.

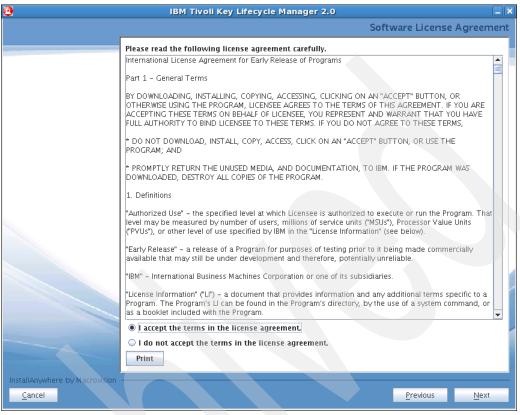


Figure 7-4 License agreement screen

8. The next screen (Figure 7-5) prompts you to select installation or reuse of DB2 and specify a directory. Make the appropriate entries and click **Next**.

0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	_×
	Select DB2	Destination
	Enter the DB2 installation directory or choose an existing DB2 copy to use with	
	Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.	
	Install DB2 Path	
	/opt/IBM/db2tkImV2	
	Reuse existing DB2 copy	
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision	Previous	Next

Figure 7-5 DB2 directory specification

9. DB2 credentials are requested on the next screen displayed (Figure 7-6). Enter the appropriate information and click **Next**.

0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	
		IBM DB2 Configuration Options
	Enter the following information and then click Next to continue.	
	DB2 Administrator ID tklmdb2	
	DB2 Administrator Password	
	Confirm Password	
	Database Name tkimdb	
	DB2 Port 50000	
	Create the DB2 Administrator?	
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision		
<u>C</u> ancel		Previous <u>N</u> ext

Figure 7-6 DB2 configuration

10.On the next configuration screen, enter **root** in the Administrator's Group field and leave the default DB2 directory. Click **Next** to create a DB2 Administrator group (Figure 7-7).

Insta	0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	
The DE2 Administrator will be created. Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator's Group Administrator / Database Home /home/Kimdb2 IBM DB2 Configuration Option Enter the following information and then click Next to continue. The DE2 Administrator will be created. Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator's Group root Administrator / Database Home /home/Kimdb2		IBM DB2 Configuration Options	
Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator's Group IBM Trivoll Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0 IBM DB2 Configuration Option Enter the following information and then click Next to continue: The DB2 Administrator will be created. Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator's Group Tot bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator / Database Home /home/tkimdb2		Enter the following information and then click Next to continue.	
Administrator / Database Home //tome/tkimdb2 IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0 IBM DB2 Configuration Option Enter the following information and then click Next to continue. The DB2 Administrator will be created. Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator's Group root Administrator / Database Home //tome/tkimdb2		Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel	
Insta			
Insta	۲	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	.][×
	Insta	Enter the following information and then click Next to continue. The DB2 Administrator will be created. Associate this user with one of root's groups: root, bin, daemon, sys, adm, disk, wheel Administrator's Group root	
Cancel Previous Next	InstallAnywhere by Macr		

Figure 7-7 DB2 administration configuration

11. The next screen displayed shows a summary of your previous entries (Figure 7-8). Review the configuration; if everything is correct, click **Next** to begin the TKLM v2 installation.

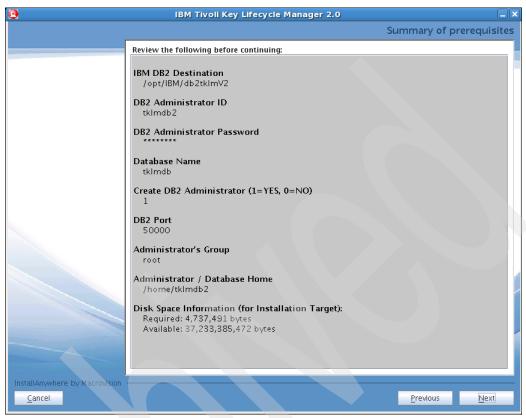


Figure 7-8 Configuration summary

12. The screen shown in Figure 7-9 is displayed while the installation process is taking place. As noted, the installation might take a few minutes. Do not touch the keyboard or mouse during this period, just let it finish.

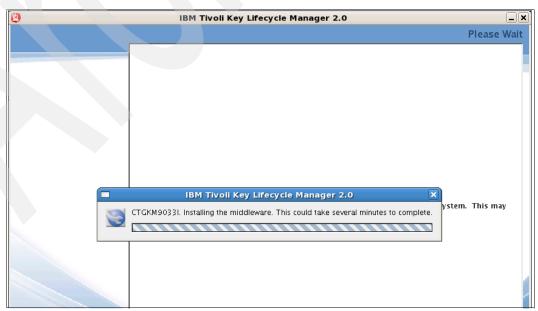


Figure 7-9 Start of TKLM installation

13. When the middleware has been installed, the wizard automatically starts creating the database, displaying the screen shown in Figure 7-10. Again, do not touch the keyboard or mouse during this process.

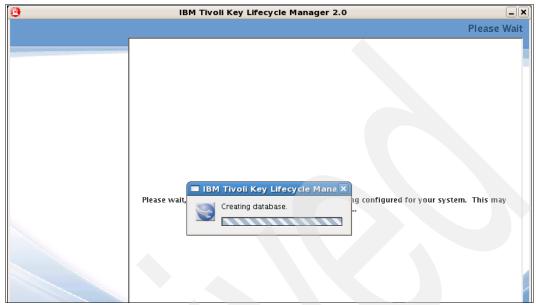


Figure 7-10 Database creation

14. When DB2 installation is complete the screen shown in Figure 7-11 is displayed. Click **Next** to start TKLM v2 deployment engine installation.

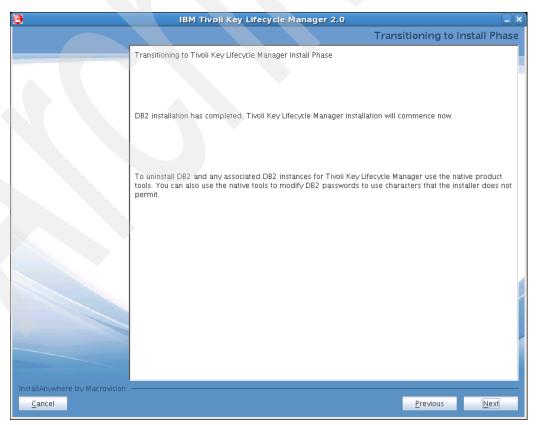


Figure 7-11 DB2 installation complete screen

15. The next screen shows progress of the installation (Figure 7-12). Do not touch the keyboard or mouse during this period.

0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0
	Deployment Engine Initialization
	The install wizard is now configuring the IBM Autonomic Deployment Engine on the local machine.
	Installing Deployment Engine.
	Step 1 of 15

Figure 7-12 TKLM v2 installation steps

16.When the screen in Figure 7-13 is displayed, specify a TKLM v2 destination directory or leave the default. Click **Next**.

0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	D C	_×_
		Select Installat	ion Directory
	Select a destination folder for Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	and Tivoli Integrated Portal.	
	Where would you like to install?		
	/opt/IBM/tivoli/tiptkImV2		
		<u>R</u> estore Default Folder	Ch <u>o</u> ose
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision			
<u>C</u> ancel		<u>P</u> revious	<u>N</u> ext

Figure 7-13 Specify TKLM installation folder

17. The next screen prompts you to wait until TIP it is configured for your system (Figure 7-14).

0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0
	Please Wait
	Please wait, Tivoli Integrated Portal is being configured for your system. This may take a moment

Figure 7-14 TIP configuration

18.On the screen shown in Figure 7-15, enter the requested information to create an application server profile. Click **Next**.

۲	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	_×_
	WebSphere II	nformation
	Provide the administrative user ID, password and default port used for creating an application : The user id and password will be used to log into Tivoli Integrated Portal.	server profile.
	User ID	
	tipadmin Password	
	Confirm Password	
	Port Number	
	16310	
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision		bloxt
	Previous	<u>N</u> ext

Figure 7-15 Server profile

Note: This will be your TIP password to log in as TIPAdmin user ID. Refer to 9.1, "Role Based Access Control (RBAC)" on page 162 for a complete description of default Users and Groups created during installation.

19. Type your TKLMAdmin password on the screen shown in Figure 7-16 and click Next.

0	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0
	Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Administrator
	Enter the password for the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Administrator ID (TKLMAdmin). The TKLMAdmin user ID should be used to log into the Tivoli Integrated Portal to administer Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager.
	Password
	Confirm Password
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision	Previous

Figure 7-16 TKLMAdmin password

Note: This password will be used to log into TKLM administrator to access all TKLM operations.

20. If you have an existing configuration profile from a previous installation and you want to migrate it to this TKLM v2 installation, select the **Migrate Encryption Key Manager** check box, specify the correct path, and click **Next**. If there is no configuration profile to migrate, just click **Next**.

8	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0		_						
	I	Encryption Key Man	ager Migratio						
	To migrate an existing Encryption Key Manager configuration to a new Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager configuration you must check the Migrate checkbox and enter the full path to a valid KeyManagerConfig.properties file.								
	Migrate Encryption Key Manager Kay Manager								
	KeyManagerConfig.properties file selection. Encryption Key Manager PropFile /KeyManagerConfig.propert	ies							
		Restore Default	Choose						
InstallAnywhere by Macrov	ision	<u>P</u> revious	<u>N</u> ext						

Figure 7-17 Migration panel

21. The Pre-Installation Summary panel (Figure 7-18) shows disk space requirements and a list of all applications that will be installed. If everything is correct, click **Install**. This begins the installation of the Tivoli Integrated Portal.

•	IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 2.0	
	Pre-installation S	Summary
	Disk space information for installation target. Required disk space: 701 MB Available disk space: 32847 MB Please review your selection and click the Install button when you are ready. • Embedded WebSphere Application Server	
	Integrated Solutions Console CGI Server Tivoli Time Scheduling Services Tivoli Common Reporting TIP Transformation Tivoli Integrated Portal Server Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Security Service TIP Dependency Management Start WebSphere Application Server	E
	Tivoli Common Reporting Configuration Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Post Configuration for Tivoli Integrated Portal Stop WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Update Installer Register1UDD_3 Register1UDD_5 Register1UDD_7 Tivoli Common Reporting	
InstallAnywhere by Macrovision Cancel	 Stop WebSphere Application Server Embedded WebSphere Application Server Start WebSphere Application Server Integrated Solutions Console CGI Server Tivoli Time Scheduling Services 	•

Figure 7-18 Pre-installation summary

22. Progress of the installation is displayed on the screen, as shown in Figure 7-19. Depending of your server characteristics, the process might take a while. Do not touch the keyboard or mouse while installation is under way, just leave it running.

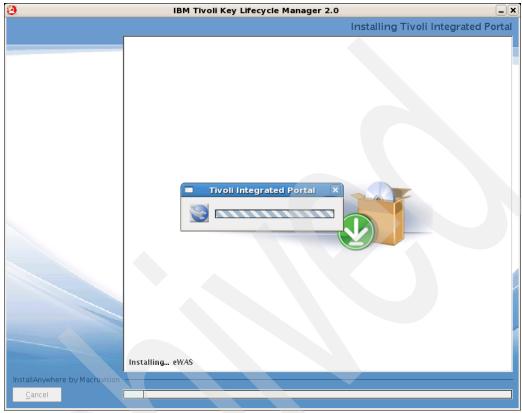


Figure 7-19 TIP installation progress

23. When installation is complete a success message is displayed (Figure 7-20). This screen also indicates how to access TKLM v2 using a browser. Click **Done** to quit the installer. This redirects you to the Tivoli Integrated Portal Login screen (Figure 7-21 on page 139).

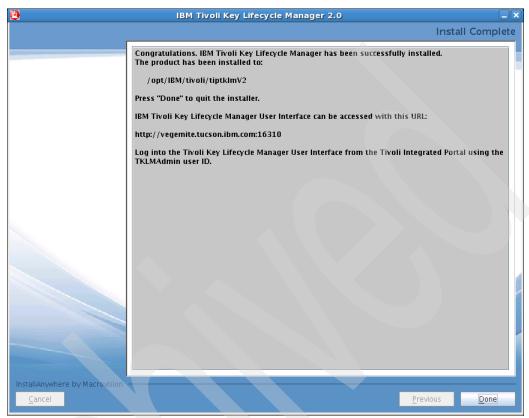


Figure 7-20 TKLM_v2_inst_done

24.On the login screen type the TKLMAdmin user ID and password created during installation and click **Log in**.

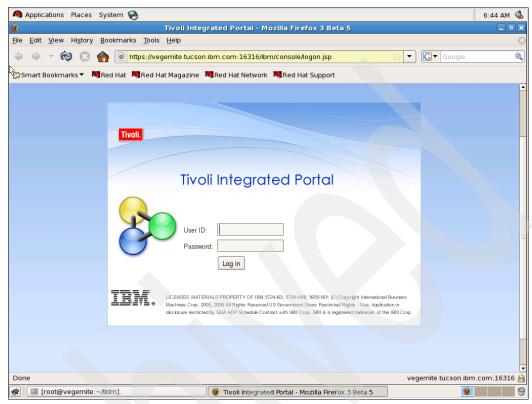


Figure 7-21 TKLM v2 login screen

25.A welcome window is displayed with an action required (Figure 7-22). Click the area indicated in the **Action items** box to create the master keystore.

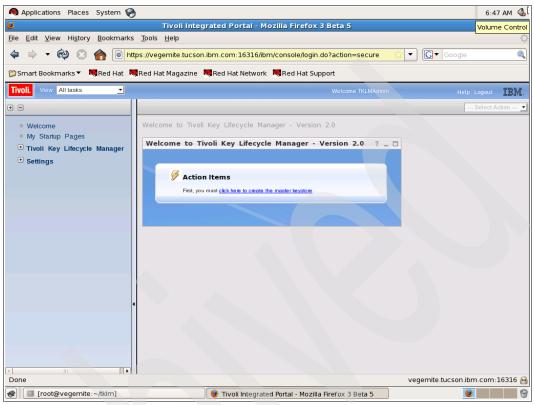


Figure 7-22 TKLM v2 welcome screen

26.Keystore credentials are requested (Figure 7-23). Type the required information and click **OK**.

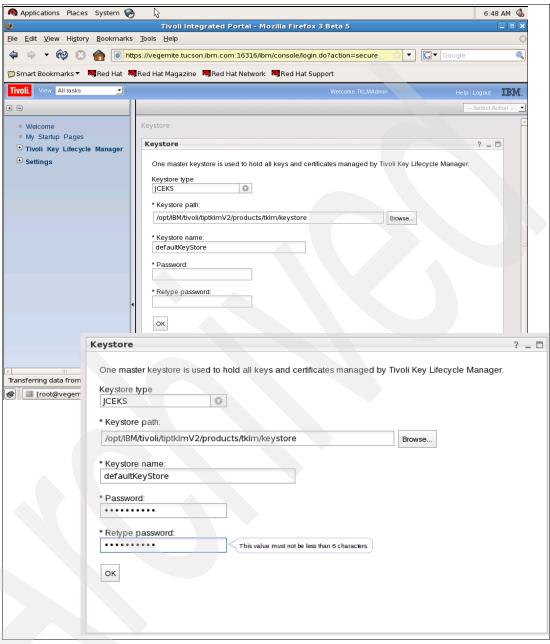


Figure 7-23 Keystore credentials

27.A Keystore Created Successfully message is displayed. Click the indicated line under **Next Steps** to start configuration.

	\mathcal{G}	6:51 AM 🤇
U	Tivoli Integrated Portal - Mozilla Firefox 3 Beta	a 5 💶 🗖
<u>File Edit View History B</u> ookmarks <u>T</u> o	ols <u>H</u> elp	
🗢 🗼 🔻 🕺 😢 🏫 💿 https:/	/vegemite.tucson.ibm.com:16316/ibm/console/login.do?acl	<mark>ion=secure ☆</mark> ▼ Google (
📁 Smart Bookmarks 🔻 💐 Red Hat 💐 Re	d Hat Magazine 🛚 🦉 Red Hat Network 🛛 🧠 Red Hat Support	
Tivoli. View: All tasks	We	Icome TKLMAdmin Help Logout
+ -		Select Action
Welcome My Startup Pages	eystore	
	Keystore	? _ 🗆
Settings	Keystore Created Successfully	
	Keystore path	/opt/(BM/fivoli/fiptkImV2/products/tkIm/keystore /defaultkeyStore
	Keystore name	defaultKey Store
	Password	*****
	Retype password	*****
	Keystore type	JCEKS
	Next Steps Click here to configure the product to use specific communication protocol(s)	

Figure 7-24 Keystore created screen

28.A configuration screen is displayed. In the **Key Serving Parameters** section clear any other marked choices and select **Create self-signed certificates**. Click **OK** (Figure 7-25) or scroll down to access additional parameter fields.

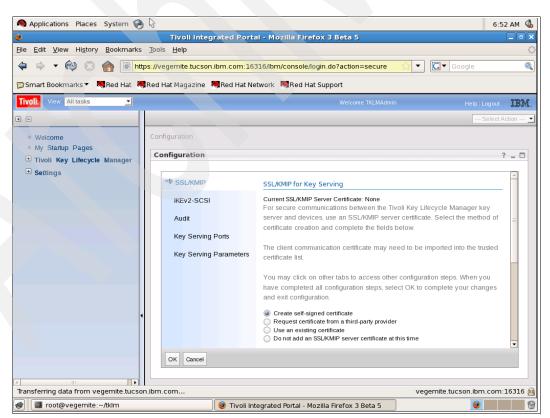


Figure 7-25 TKLM v2 keystore configuration

29. Enter the appropriate certificate label, description, and validity period. Click **OK** (Figure 7-26).

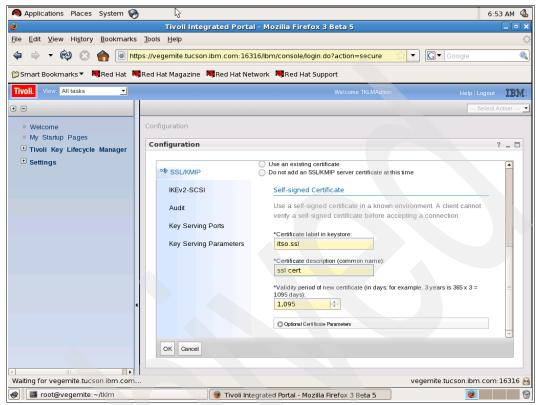


Figure 7-26 Key_parameters

30. A final summary configuration screen is displayed, as shown in Figure 7-27. This screen also reminds you that a server restart is required to update the configuration, and that you should make a backup copy of the file.

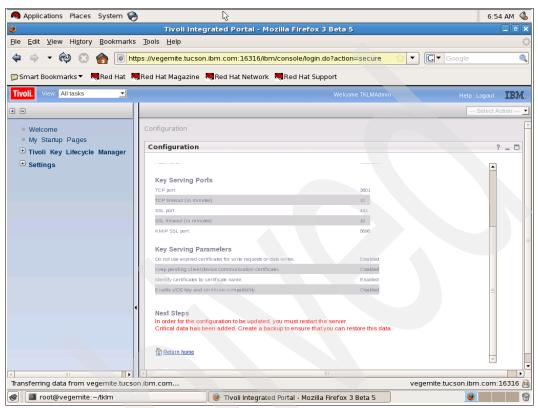


Figure 7-27 Final configuration summary

31. When you access the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager a welcome screen is displayed (Figure 7-28). Procedures accessed from the Key and Device Management section are required to complete TKLM configuration. Refer to 9.1, "Role Based Access Control (RBAC)" on page 162 to continue the TKLM v2 configuration steps.

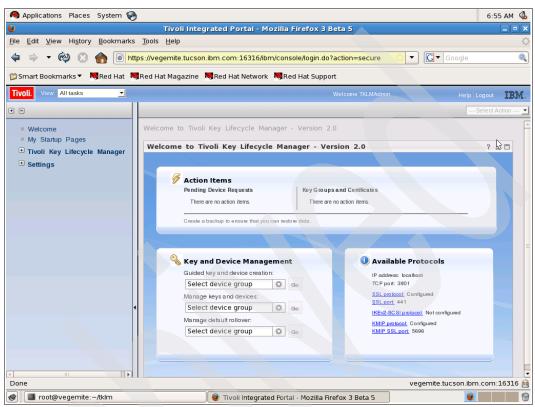
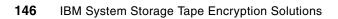


Figure 7-28 TKLM v2 welcome screen



TKLM operational considerations

In this chapter we discuss TKLM operational considerations, including the following topics:

- Scripting
- Synchronizing primary TKLM configuration data
- Backup procedures
- Removing web browser certificate warnings

We also include mixed-mode data-sharing examples in which we describe the steps required to share encrypted tapes with a business partner running TKLM.

Note: All of the operations discussed here can be performed using either the GUI or a command-line interface (CLI). For the sake of brevity, we have not included the complete details about starting the CLI as the first part of each procedure. This important first step is as follows:

Starting the CLI on Windows

To start the Jython interactive command line as administrator or equivalent user, run the following command (assuming TKLM is installed in the default c:\IBM\tivoli\tip\bin directory):

wsadmin.bat -username TKLMAdmin -password password -lang jython

Starting the CLI on Linux, AIX, Solaris

To start the Jython interactive command line as root or equivalent user, run the following command (assuming TKLM is installed in the default /opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin/directory):

wsadmin.sh -username TKLMAdmin -password password -lang jython

Elsewhere in this chapter this step is simply referred to as "Open the command line using the appropriate method."

8.1 Scripting with TKLM

As with any complex piece of software, routine tasks must be accomplished. These tasks can be automated using the graphical user interface, which not only simplifies administration, it also provides reliability and predictability. In this section we present an overview of the scripting interface. This is not intended to replace the TKLM command line reference, but to provide several supplemental examples. The scripting interface to TKLM is Jython, a full implementation of Python integrated with the Java platform. For more information about Jython, visit:

http://www.jython.org/Project/

The reference section of the TKLM Information Center contains a complete command line reference and is available at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v2r1/topic/com.ibm.tklm.doc/ref/ ref ic cli.html

We found that the most useful way of interacting with the command line was to write a Python script and then invoke it from the command line or a launcher.

8.1.1 Simple Linux backup script example

This script is an example only; it requires some enhancement to be used in production. For instance, including the password in the script is not a good idea.

Example 8-1 invokes the TKLM script on Linux. Example 8-2 shows the contents of takeBackup.py, which takes a backup of the currently running TKLM. Example 8-3 shows the output.

Example 8-1 TKLM Script invocation on linux

/opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin/wsadmin.sh -username TKLMAdmin -password password -lang
jython -f takeBackup.py

Example 8-2 The takeBackup.py contents

```
print "Take a Backup of the currently Running TKLM"
print AdminTask.tklmBackupRun('[-backupDirectory /root/TKLMBackup -password
myBackupPwd]')
print "A backup was placed in /root/TKLMBackup with the password myBackupPwd"
```

Example 8-3 Output of Example 8-2

```
WASX7209I: Connected to process "server1" on node TIPNode using SOAP connector;
The type of process is: UnManagedProcess
Take a Backup of the currently Running TKLM
(0) Backup operation succeeded.
```

```
A backup was placed in /root/TKLMBackup with the password myBackupPwd
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# cd TKLMBackup/
[root@dyn9011169152 TKLMBackup]# dir
tklm_v1.0_20081114153628MST_backup.jar
[root@dyn9011169152 TKLMBackup]#
```

You can see from Example 8-3 on page 148 that the script in Example 8-2 first prints out sample text (nothing complicated here). Then, the script invokes **tk1mBackupRun** to place the backup in /root/TKLMBackup with the password myBackupPwd, and then prints more descriptive text. The backup operation can easily be added to any script that takes action against the TKLM to capture a before and after snapshot. Enhancing this script could also be used to automate synchronizing TKLM servers by setting up a cron job or Windows task scheduler to take a backup, copy it to the secondary TKLM, and restore the backup.

8.2 Synchronizing primary TKLM configuration data

For each keystore, you should define one TKLM as the primary. This primary keystore is the one on which to make changes. Changes are then replicated on the secondary TKLM servers. When selecting the TKLM servers, at a minimum they must be running the same OS, and the secondary TKLM must have at least as much free disk space as the primary. Matching the two servers as closely as possible is desirable. You should then install TKLM using the same DB2 and TIP settings so that a backup from the primary TKLM can be restored on the secondary TKLM server.

8.2.1 Setting up primary and secondary TKLM servers

For this example we have two Windows 2003 hosts running under VMware ESX. This allowed us to easily match the environment seen by TKLM and its middleware. For the purposes of this example we chose not to clone the VMware image, but instead we performed default installations using the same configuration and passwords for DB2, TKLM, and the keystores. To ensure the installations were the same, we recorded the primary TKLM installation to a response file. However, when the response file it created was incomplete and did not allow the installer on the secondary machine to run, we instead used the graphical installer and kept defaults the same as for the first machine.

Note: TKLM does not tolerate spaces in the installation directory name. You cannot install to c:\Program Files or to any other directory that contains a space. The graphical installer defaults to c:\ibm which works fine.

A good practice is to fill out the installation worksheets found in the *Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Installation and Configuration Guide,* SC23-9977.

You can also obtain the product documentation from the IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Information Center at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v2r1/topic/com.ibm.tklm.doc/welc
ome.htm

Administration information is presented in HTML. The following guides are also provided as PDF files:

- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Quick Start Guide
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Installation and Configuration Guide

Note: The TKLM installer does not always set up the required services to start automatically, so be sure to test your TKLM installation after you have enabled the services and restarted the server.

8.3 TKLM backup and restore procedures

The TKLM backup saves a password-protected copy of the TKLM server settings, including the keystore and DB2 tables. However, when restoring, the function assumes that the environment is similar. TKLM restore operations should be on the same platform with the same system, user account information and TKLM, and middleware file layout.

Important: Backup and restore are disruptive to the TKLM server as of TKLM 1.0.

Because the keystore is backed up with the TKLM instance, you should treat the backups with the same logical and physical security controls that you apply to the TKLM keystore.

8.3.1 Backup using the GUI

Using the GUI to back up the TKLM configuration is fairly simple but does require discipline by the administrator to perform a backup after significant changes and at a periodic interval. Before starting the backup, the administrator should plan for either a small service outage or confirm that one or more secondary key servers are running.

To perform a back up using the GUI:

- 1. Select Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager → Settings → Backup and Restore.
- 2. Click Create Backup (Figure 8-1).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	~		Wel	come tipadmin		Help Logout
+ =						Select Acti
 Welcome My Startup Pages 	-	Ose the table below to clea	ie, ueleie, ul lestule i	unentry available backt	ap mes.	
Security		*Backup repository location:				
Users and Groups		/scratch			Browse	Display Backups
 Troubleshooting Reporting 		Create Backup				
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager		Restore From Backup			Filter	
* Key Administration		Backup File	Backup Created	Backup Created By	Backup Description	
Settings		/scratch/tklm_v1.0_2	0 oct 16, 2008 8:49:08 AM	tipadmin	test	~
 Keystore 						
< Configuration >	~					

Figure 8-1 TKLM backup/restore

3. The panel in Figure 8-2 is displayed. You are prompted to select a location for the backup, a password for the backup, and a short description.

voli. View: All tasks	Welcome tipadmin	Help Logout
•		Select Action
Welcome	Use the table below to create, delete, or restore currently available backup lifes.	
 My Startup Pages Security 	Create Backup	8
Users and Groups	*Select location for this backup:	
Troubleshooting	/scratch Browse	
Reporting	*Create password:	
 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Hey Administration 		
 Settings 	*Retype password:	
 Keystore 	Backup description:	
Configuration	Demo Backup	
 Backup and Restore Settings 		
- octango	Create Backup Cancel	

Figure 8-2 Backup creation

4. Click **Create Backup**. A warning message indicates that the backup will be stopping the server. In our environment, this was a short outage of a couple of minutes.

8.3.2 Restore using the GUI

Using the GUI to restore the TKLM configuration is fairly simple but discipline is required by the administrator to perform a backup after significant changes and on a periodic interval.

Note: Restoring a backup requires command-line access to restart the server after the file has been restored.

To restore using the GUI:

1. Select Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Backup and Restore (Figure 8-3).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	*			Wel	lcome tipadmin		Help Logout	IBM.
+ =	Τ						Select /	Action 🗸
Welcome My Startup Pages		038 11	S IADIE DEIUW ID CIEALE	, uelete, ul lestule (cunenny avanable backu	ip iliea.		
Security Users and Groups Troubleshooting		*Backu /scrat	p repository location: ch			Browse	Display Backups	
 Reporting Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 			eate Backup De estore From Backup			Filter		
Key Administration			Backup File	Backup Created	Backup Created By	Backup Description		
Settings			/scratch/tklm_v1.0_20	Oct 16, 2008 8:49:08 AM	tipadmin	test		
Keystore Configuration								~

Figure 8-3 TKLM Backup/Restore

2. From the list of Backup Files, select the file that you want to restore and click **Restore From Backup** as shown in Figure 8-4.

Tivoli. View: All tasks			Welc	come tipadmin		Help	Logout
± =							Select Acti
Welcome My Startup Pages Security Users and Groups Troubleshooting	*Backup repositi		2, UBIBLE, UI TESLUTE CL	unenny available backt	Browse	Display Backup	s
 Reporting Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Key Administration 		om Backup	lete Backup		Filter		
 Settings Keystore 	Backup /scratch	File /tklm_v1.0_20	Backup Created Oct 16, 2008 8:49:08 AM	Backup Created By	Backup Description	<u>~</u>	
Configuration Backup and Restore	V /scratch	/tklm_v1.0_20	Nov 17, 2008 11:07:01 AM	tipadmin	Demo Backup		
+ Settings							
•	<					×	
						Selected: 1, Total: 2	
<	Backup can als system for redu			rsion of Tivoli Key Lifec	cycle Manager on anothe	r production	

Figure 8-4 Select the backup file to restore

3. Enter the password for the backup file, as shown in Figure 8-5.

Tivoli. View: All tasks 🗸	Welcome tipadmin		IBM.
+ -	Vae tile taule below to create, uelete, ur reature currentity available backop lites.	Select A	Action 🔽
= Welcome = My Startup Pages ● Security	Restore From Backup		0
Users and Groups Troubleshooting Reporting Key Administration Settings Keystore Configuration	Restoring the system will stop the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server. Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager will be downgraded to the level of the backup that you select. Any changes made after the selected backup will be lost, including the meta data. *Backup location and file name: [scratchthtm v1 0 2008/1117/10701MST_backup.jar *Enter password:		
■ Backup and Restore Settings	You will be required to manually restart the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server. Restore Backup Cancel system for redundancy and failover.		

Figure 8-5 Enter the password

- 4. Confirm that it is OK to stop the TKLM server and overwrite the current configuration.
- 5. Restart TKLM, by opening a command line and then:
 - a. On Windows you must be an administrator or equivalent user. Perform these steps:
 - i. From the c:\IBM\tivoli\tip\bin directory run **stopServer.bat server1**.
 - ii. Enter the tipadmin user name and password.
 - iii. Run startServer.bat.
 - iv. Enter the tipadmin user name and password.

- b. If on Linux, AIX, or Solaris, you must be root or equivalent privileged user that can start and stop the TKLM services. Perform these steps (see Example 8-4 on page 153):
 - i. From the /opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin directory, run stopServer.sh server1.
 - i. Enter the tipadmin user name and password.
 - ii. Run startServer.sh.
 - iii. Enter the tipadmin surname and password.

```
Example 8-4 Starting and stopping the TKLM server on Linux
```

```
[root@dyn9011169152 bin]# ./stopServer.sh server1
ADMU0116I: Tool information is being logged in file
/opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/server1/stopServer.log
ADMU0128I: Starting tool with the TIPProfile profile
ADMU3100I: Reading configuration for server: server1
Realm/Cell Name: <default>
Username: tipadmin
Password:
ADMU3201I: Server stop request issued. Waiting for stop status.
ADMU4000I: Server server1 stop completed.
[root@dyn9011169152 bin]# ./startServer.sh server1
ADMU0116I: Tool information is being logged in file
/opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/server1/startServer.log
ADMU0128I: Starting tool with the TIPProfile profile
ADMU3100I: Reading configuration for server: server1
ADMU3200I: Server launched. Waiting for initialization status.
ADMU3000I: Server server1 open for e-business; process id is 1955
[root@dyn9011169152 bin]#
```

8.3.3 Backup using the command line

Backing up by using the CLI is similar to using the GUI, only less forgiving. Because of the startup time for the Jython interface, backing up using the GUI is probably as fast and easier, unless you have integrated it into other scripts. Refer to , "" on page 147 for an example of a quick backup script.

Note: TKLM Backup is a disruptive operation so ensure that you only perform backups during maintenance windows or when you have a secondary TKLM up and serving keys.

Running the backup from the CLI

Open the command line using the appropriate method.

When you are at the wsadmin prompt, you can take a backup using the command:

print AdminTask.tklmBackupRun('[backupDirectory <the directory to save the backup in> -password constant to use on the backup file>]')

After this completes you should have something similar to Example 8-5 on page 154, from a linux TKLM server. This example creates a backup with no description and a password of myBackupPws in the /root/TKLMBackup directory. For a Windows backup, simply enter a valid Windows path name, such as c:\TKLMBackup.

Example 8-5 Taking a backup from the CLI

wsadmin>exit [root@dyn9011169152 ~]#

8.3.4 Restore using the command line

Restore using the command line is similar to using the command line from the GUI, with the advantage that you are already at a command prompt so it is more natural to restart the server. You could even script up the restore operation so it includes starting and stopping the server.

Note: TKLM restore is a disruptive operation ensure you only perform restore's during maintenance windows or when you have a primary TKLM up and serving keys.

Running the restore from the CLI

Open the command line using the appropriate method.

When you are at the wsadmin prompt, you can restore a backup by using the command:

print AdminTask.tklmBackupRunRestore('[-backupFilePath <backup file inc file name>
-password <backup file password>]')

After this completes you should have something similar to Example 8-6, from a Linux TKLM server. This example restores a backup file with a password of myBackupPws with the full file name. For a Windows backup, simply enter a valid windows path name like c:\TKLMBackup\<backup filename>.jar. The example then restarts the TKLM server, which is a required step after performing a restore operation.

Example 8-6 Restoring TKLM from a backup file

```
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# /opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin/wsadmin.sh -username TKLMAdmin
-password password -lang jython
WASX7209I: Connected to process "server1" on node TIPNode using SOAP connector;
The type of process is: UnManagedProcess
WASX7031I: For help, enter: "print Help.help()"
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmBackupRunRestore('[-backupFilePath
/root/TKLMBackup/tklm_v1.0_20081117141514MST_backup.jar -password myBackupPws]')
(0) Restore operation succeeded. Restart the server.
```

8.4 Data sharing with business partners

At some time, you will probably want to send an encrypted tape to a business partner. Keys or sets of keys will have to be defined that can be read by you and your business partner. At this time, you can only import and export keys from TKLM using the TKLM command line.

8.4.1 Sharing TS1100 certificate data with a business partner

TKLM can export or import certificates in two formats: base64 and Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER). The default used in our example is base64.

Listing the current certificates in the keystore

Open the command line using the appropriate method.

List the keys in the keystore using the tklmCertList command as shown in Example 8-7. To export a certificate you must first determine its UUID. Find the key alias by using the GUI and then list out the key by name to find its UUID.

Example 8-7 Sample key store list usage

```
/opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin/wsadmin.sh -username TKLMAdmin -password password -lang
jython
WASX7209I: Connected to process "server1" on node TIPNode using SOAP connector;
The type of process is: UnManagedProcess
WASX7031I: For help, enter: "print Help.help()"
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmCertList()
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
uuid = CERTIFICATE-c68fb4ab-55c2-4599-8362-824d5fc45858
alias(es) = ssl for key serving
key store name(s) = Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore
key state = active
issuer name = CN=SSL for Key Serving, OU=, 0=, L=, ST=, C=
subject name = CN=SSL for Key Serving, OU=, 0=, L=, ST=, C=
creation date = Nov 17, 2008
expiration date = Nov 17, 2011
```

```
serial number = 1226963273423369000
```

```
uuid = CERTIFICATE-71ee0c59-676d-4d71-ab22-3f7dfeee5af0
alias(es) = 3592 certificate
key store name(s) = Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore
key state = active
issuer name = CN=Certificate for 3592, OU=, 0=, L=, ST=, C=
subject name = CN=Certificate for 3592, OU=, 0=, L=, ST=, C=
creation date = Nov 17, 2008
expiration date = Nov 17, 2011
serial number = 1226963425384785000
```

```
wsadmin>
```

If you only want a particular key, you have to use the alias(es) and key store name(s) parameters as shown in Example 8-8.

Example 8-8 keystore list using -alias

```
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmCertList('[-alias "3592 certificate" -keyStoreName
"Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore"]')
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
```

```
uuid = CERTIFICATE-71ee0c59-676d-4d71-ab22-3f7dfeee5af0
```

```
alias(es) = 3592 certificate
key store name(s) = Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore
key state = active
issuer name = CN=Certificate for 3592, OU=, O=, L=, ST=, C=
subject name = CN=Certificate for 3592, OU=, O=, L=, ST=, C=
creation date = Nov 17, 2008
expiration date = Nov 17, 2011
serial number = 1226963425384785000
```

wsadmin>

TS1100 encrypted media certificate export

Now that we know the certificate UUID as shown in Example 8-8, we can export the key by using the tklmCertExport command, as shown in Example 8-9.

Example 8-9 Using tklmCertExport to export certificates from TKLM

```
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmCertExport('[-uuid
CERTIFICATE-71ee0c59-676d-4d71-ab22-3f7dfeee5af0 -fileName /root/3592certificate]')
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
/root/3592certificate
wsadmin>exit
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# cat /root/3592certificate
----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----
MIICSjCCAbOgAwIBAgIIEQcMvBJ05GgwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQAwVjEJMAcGA1UEBhMAMQkwBwYD
VQQIEwAxCTAHBgNVBAcTADEJMAcGA1UEChMAMQkwBwYDVQQLEwAxHTAbBgNVBAMTFEN1cnRpZm1j
YXR1IGZvciAzNTkyMB4XDTA4MTExNzIzMTAyNFoXDTExMTExNzIzMTAyNFowVjEJMAcGA1UEBhMA
MQkwBwYDVQQIEwAxCTAHBgNVBAcTADEJMAcGA1UEChMAMQkwBwYDVQQLEwAxHTAbBgNVBAMTFEN1
cnRpZmljYXRlIGZvciAzNTkyMIGfMAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQCXnKuPspW7ErCJ
heYLEgU/VGI1qfOMN22NXgkgsO3DIROBzqvAWgnYhBFoQraRhdZYK4Vu55XkIkzad7jVJ3yL771W
CXzRYHvLUmISIEpTGD4QBDSMFxF3JcRQrBUYQHuWkzqWn2sLbViEF+3NQvtqrP/8PTAuGS+rhhbt
n5EgyQIDAQABoyEwHzAdBgNVHQ4EFgQUYH89NQCw/zxWUVsqy1f06sk0K0MwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEF
BQADgYEAWrj8YX5z0AbfVAi1CmhVfxEcb3eeyXfh5b/7AGZy0H+xtxLJdt8Ro3H66k52uI7kRQf8
```

```
jCixfpbal8ITZHey6WH43WH1+gnSJIhq8CLugbRGaWcwuj9xSORdYHvloxhKBiwPVMLsrTGCsJCh
Yv7GiSHs9UehS58N7savmSQqaXo=
----END CERTIFICATE----
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]#
```

You can then send this certificate containing your public key to a business partner so they can write encrypted tapes that you can read using the private key stored in TKLM.

TS1100 encrypted media certificate import

Your business partner must send you a certificate containing the public key that the business partner would like to use to encrypt the TS1100 cartridges. After you receive the key, you can import the certificate as shown in Example 8-10. The parameter usage is as follows:

```
print AdminTask.tklmCertImport('[-fileName <full path to certificate> -alias <the
name of the certificate in tklm> -format <base64 or DER> -keyStoreName "Tivoli
Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore" -usage <3592>]')
```

Example 8-10 Importing a certificate from a business partner

```
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmCertImport('[-fileName /root/bpCert.cer -alias
bp3592Cert -format base64 -keyStoreName "Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore"
-usage 3592]')
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
wsadmin>
```

8.4.2 Sharing LTO key data with a business partner

TKLM can share keys with business partners using TKLM by exporting the symmetric or secret keys. These keys are then imported into the business partner's key store and can be used to read or write tapes written with the same key or keys.

LTO encrypted media key group export

Before you can export keys to a business partner you must first have (by import), from the business partner, a public key to use for encrypting the LTO keys, which will allow secure transmission of the LTO key (by export).

Begin by opening the command line using the appropriate method.

Importing a business partner's public key

Your business partner must send you a certificate containing the public key that the business partner would like to use to encrypt the LTO keys. After you receive the key, you can import the certificate as shown in Example 8-11. The parameter usage is:

```
print AdminTask.tklmCertImport('[-fileName <full path to certificate> -alias <the
name of the certificate in tklm> -format <base64 or DER> -keyStoreName "Tivoli
Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore" -usage <3592>]')
```

Example 8-11 Importing a certificate from a business partner

```
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmCertImport('[-fileName /root/bpCert.cer -alias
bpLTOCert -format base64 -keyStoreName "Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore"
-usage 3592]')
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
wsadmin>
```

Viewing key aliases with the GUI

You can view a range of LTO keys when using the TKLM command line. LTO keys are referred to as secret or symmetric keys. For this example, we have created a key group named LTO1; all keys in this key group start with the three letters LTO. Using the GUI, you can change the view in the TKLM to show the key aliases in a key group, as shown in Figure 8-6.

	sks	_	Welcon	ie tipadmin			lelp Logout	IB	Μ.
							Select	Action	
Key Administrati	on for LTO Tape Driv	es					?	_ 0	
View Key	s, Key Group Membership a	and Drives		Add *	Modify				
			2		Fill				
Key	Key Group Me	embership	Drive Serial	Number	Туре	Key Group or			
ltx000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1		000012345678		l m	System Default		-	
ltx000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								
ltx000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								
Ite000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								
100000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								
100000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								
lts000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								=
lts000000000000000000000000000000000000	LTO1								
Itocccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc	LTO1								
			-					*	
								E F	
Accept requests from	all IBM drives.	Þ	4						

Figure 8-6 The key alias in a key group

Exporting LTO keys from the CLI

After you know the alias of the key groups you want to export, you can use the CLI to export them.

Open the command line using the appropriate method.

Exporting the LTO keys

In Example 8-12, we are exporting the keys LTO0000...0 to LTO0000...9. Note that the command line allows you to ignore the leading 0s (zeros) so the range passed to the command line using the -aliasRange parameter is LTO0-9. The next option -fileName is the absolute path of the file we are exporting. You can use a relative path but then it is relative to

the TKLM install directory. The keyStoreName parameter must be set to "Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore". The -type option must be set to secretkey because this tells the export command we are exporting LTO keys. The **tklmKeyExport** command line can also be used to export public-private key pairs from TKLM if necessary. The -keyAlias paramater specifies which certificate of the public key to use to encrypt the key file.

Example 8-12 Exporting LTO keys

```
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# /opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin/wsadmin.sh -username TKLMAdmin
-password password -lang jython
WASX7209I: Connected to process "server1" on node TIPNode using SOAP connector;
The type of process is: UnManagedProcess
WASX7031I: For help, enter: "print Help.help()"
wsadmin>
wsadmin>print AdminTask.tklmKeyExport ('[-aliasRange LT00-9 -fileName
/root/bpLT0Keys -keyStoreName "Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore" -type
secretkey -keyAlias "3592 certificate"]')
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
```

LTO encrypted media key or keys import

To import a TKLM key file from another source you must first have the certificate containing the private key of the public-private key pair used to encrypt the key file loaded into TKLM as described in 8.4.1, "Sharing TS1100 certificate data with a business partner" on page 155. To load the key file you have to use the CLI.

Open the command line using the appropriate method.

Loading the key file into TKLM

Example 8-13 shows a script that loads a key file into TKLM. The importKeyFile.sh script calls the importKeyFile.py script, which prints descriptive text and then imports a file named /root/ltoKeyFile using the private key or certificate ltocert. The type, secretkey, is an LTO asymmetric key.

The usage parameter is a required option specifying that this is an LTO key file. For additional options see the CLI reference at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v2r1/topic/com.ibm.tklm.doc/ref/ ref_ic_cli_key_import.html

Example 8-13 Sample Jython script to add a key file

```
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# cat importKeyFile.sh
/opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/bin/wsadmin.sh -username TKLMAdmin -password password -lang
jython -f importKeyFile.py
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# cat importKeyFile.py
print "Importing key file /root/ltoKeyFile to TKLM with the same alias as used on
other TKLM"
print AdminTask.tklmKeyImport('[-fileName /root/ltoKeyFile -keyAlias ltocert
-keyStoreName "Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Keystore" -type secretkey -usage
LTO]')
```

[root@dyn9011169152 ~]#

Example 8-14 imports an LTO secret or asymmetric key group into TKLM.

Example 8-14 Key Import into TKLM

```
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]# ./importKeyFile.sh
WASX7209I: Connected to process "server1" on node TIPNode using SOAP connector;
The type of process is: UnManagedProcess
Importing key file /root/ltoKeyFile to TKLM with the same alias as used on other
TKLM
CTGKM0001I Command succeeded.
[root@dyn9011169152 ~]#
```

8.5 Fixing the security warnings in your web browser

Internet Explorer and Firefox both raise security warnings about the TKLM certificate. This action is normal because the certificate that is installed is an unsigned certificate. If you want to stop the warnings, following the steps in this section.

8.5.1 Fixing the security warning in Internet Explorer browser

If you receive the error shown in Figure 8-7, click **Continue** if you are sure that you have the correct IP for your TKLM server and you have not previously installed the certificate for this server.



Figure 8-7 Warning message in Internet Explorer browser window

Click Certificate Error and select view certificates.



Select **Install certificate** and follow the prompts to install the TKLM server certificate. After you have added the certificate, restart Internet Explorer.

Note: You must connect to TKLM using the host name in the certificate, not IP or other host names, to avoid certificate mismatch warnings.

9

Administration

This chapter discusses the administration of Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM), covering the following topics:

- ► Role Based Access Control (RBAC) new for TKLM V2.0
- Device Groups new for TKLM V2.0
- LTO Key Groups updated for TKLM V2.0
- 3592 Certificates updated for TKLM V2.0
- Scheduling Key Group and Certificate Rollovers updated for TKLM V2.0

9.1 Role Based Access Control (RBAC)

This section covers the support and use of Role Based Access Control.

9.1.1 Permissions

TKLM defines permissions that restrict users' access to specific actions and device groups.

- Action permissions: Specific actions that can be performed on devices and key/certificates. These actions are:
 - *klmView*: To view objects
 - klmCreate: To create objects
 - klmModify: To modify objects
 - klmDelete: To delete objects
 - klmGet: Required by key or certificate export command
- Device group: The TKLM device families and user-defined device groups. The action permissions only apply to the device groups the user is granted access to.
 - LTO, 3592, DS8000, DS5000, GENERIC
- Standalone: These permissions are used to manage device groups.
 - klmAdminDeviceGroup: To create, view, and delete a new device group
 - klmAudit: To view the device audit data
 - klmBackup: To back up the TKLM
 - klmConfigure: To configure TKLM, such as setting global configuration properties, creating SSL or IKEv2-SCS certificates, and so forth
 - klmRestore: To restore TKLM
 - kImSecurityOfficer: TKLM root permission, meaning access to everything within TKLM

9.1.2 Installation defaults

The User and Group defaults that are used during installation are as follows:

- Default users:
 - The TKLMAdmin is the primary administrator and has access to all TKLM operations. This user is created during install and assigned the klmSecurityOfficer permission.
 - The TIPAdmin is the primary Tivoli Interface Portal (TIP) administrator and has access to manage users and roles. This user is also created during install, and has no access to TKLM.
- Default groups: Two default groups are created during installation:
 - *klmSecurityOfficerGroup*: A member of this group has the security officer role.
 - *kImBackupRestoreGroup*: A member of this group has backup and restore permission.

9.1.3 Adding new TKLM users

The TIPAdmin can define new TKLM users and assign specific permissions.

To create users and assign roles using the GUI, follow these steps:

1. Because users are going to be created, log in as TIPAdmin (Figure 9-1).

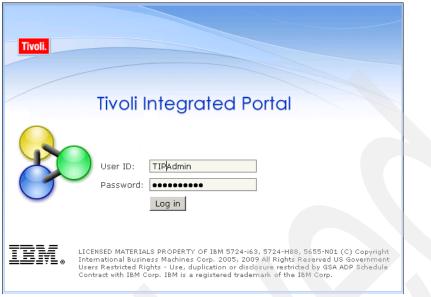


Figure 9-1 TIP Login with TIPAdmin user

2. The welcome panel is displayed (Figure 9-2).

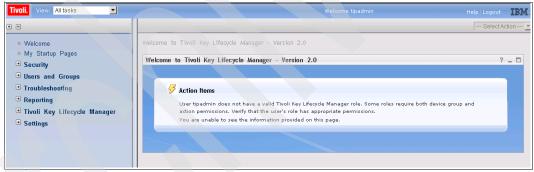


Figure 9-2 Welcome Panel

3. Expand **Users and Groups** in the navigation pane and select **Manage Users** (Figure 9-3).



Figure 9-3 Welcome panel with Users and Groups expanded

4. Figure 9-4 shows the **Search for Users** panel. You can either search for a user to model the new user profile on or create a totally new one; this scenario shows the creation of a new user. Click **Create**.

🕙 Tivoli Integrated Portal - Mozilla Firefox	
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Hi <u>s</u> tory <u>B</u> ookmarks <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp)
Tivoli Integrated Portal × T	ivoli Integrated Portal 🛛 🗙 🔶
Tiveli	
Tivoli. View: All tasks	We
• •	
Velcome	Manage Users
My Startup Pages	WIM User Management ? _ 🗆
Security	
Users and Groups	
Administrative User Roles	Search for Users
= Administrative Group Roles	Search by *Search for *Maximum results
Manage Users	UserID 💌 * 100
Manage Groups	Search
+ Troubleshooting	
+ Reporting	Create Delete
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	
	Page 1 of 1 Total: 0
•	

Figure 9-4 Search for users

5. Enter the pertinent information In the Create a User panel (Figure 9-5) and click Create.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome tipadmin
+ =		
 Welcome My Startup Pages Security 	Manage Users WIM User Management	? _ 🗆
 Users and Groups Administrative User Roles Administrative Group Roles 	Create a User	
 Manage Users Manage Groups 	*User ID TKLMUser1 Group M	tembership
 Troubleshooting Reporting 	*First name *Last name John Doe	
 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	E-mail TKLMuser1@us.ibm.com	
	*Password *Confirm pas	sword
	Create Cancel	

Figure 9-5 Create a user

6. The panel returned shows that the user was successfully created (Figure 9-6). Click **Close**.

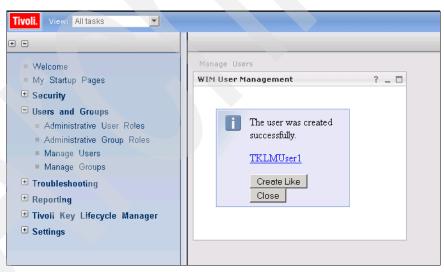


Figure 9-6 User created successfully

7. The User List is updated with the newly created user as shown in Figure 9-7.

Tivoli. View: All tasks 💌						Welcome tipadr	nin	Help Logout	IBM
• •								Select A	ction 💌
■ Welcome ■ My Startup Pages ● Security	Manage WIM Us		nagement						? _ 🗆
 Users and Groups Administrative User Roles Administrative Group Roles Manage Users Manage Groups 	Se U	earch f earch b Jser ID Search	*		Maximum r 00	esults			
Troubleshooting Heporting		Creat	e Delet	e Select	an action	•		DC7#	
• Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	S	elect	User ${\rm I\!D}$	First name	Last name	E-mail	Unique	e Name	
• Settings			TKLMUser1	John	Doe	TKLMuser1@us.ibm.com	uid=TKLMUser1,o=def	aultWIMFileBasedReal	lm
•		Page	1 of 1				Total: 1		

Figure 9-7 User list

9.1.4 Assigning roles to new users

After the new user has been created, a role must be assigned.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in to Tivoli Integrated Portal as TIPAdmin (Figure 9-1 on page 163).
- 2. Expand **Users and Groups** in the navigation panel (Figure 9-3 on page 164) and select **Administrative User Roles**.
- 3. On the Administrative User Roles panel, click Add (Figure 9-8).



Figure 9-8 Administrative user roles panel

4. Enter the name of the user you want to add, select the appropriate roles, and click **OK** (Figure 9-9).



Figure 9-9 Selecting administrative user roles

5. If the role selection was successful, the **Administrative User Roles** panel is displayed, prompting you to either **Save** or **Review** the addition (Figure 9-10). Click **Save**.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome tipadmin	Help Logout
• •		Select Actio
 Welcome My Startup Pages Security Users and Groups Administrative User Roles Administrative Group Roles Manage Users Manage Groups Troubleshooting Reporting Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Administrative User Roles Administrative User Roles Messages These changes will be effective immediately. A Changes have been made to your local configuration. You can: Save directly to the master configuration. Review changes before saving or discarding. Administrative User Roles Use this page to add, update or to remove administrative roles to users. Assigning administrative roles to users anables them to administra application servers through the administrative console or through waadmin scripting. Logout Add Remove C The Save Save Save Save Save Save Save Sav	Clos Help Field help For field help inform select a field help inform urror appears. Page help More information ab- this page
	Select User Role(s) Login Status TKLMAdmin kImSecurityOfficer, suppressmonitor Not Active TKLMUser1 kImCreate, kImView, kImDelete, kImModify, kImAudit Not Active Usedmin iscadmins, torSuperAdmin, kImSecurityOfficer Active Total 3	

Figure 9-10 Administrative User Roles Panel, requesting Save

6. After the save is complete, the **Administrative User Roles** panel is redisplayed with the new user now included in the user list (Figure 9-11).

Tivoli. View: All tasks			Welcome tipad	lmin	Help Logout
• •					Select Act
Welcome My Startup Pages Security Users and Groups Administrative User Roles Administrative Group Roles Manage Users	Adminis Admi Use t users script	enables them t	es		Cic Field help For field help inforr select a field label marker when the h cursor appears. Page help More information a this page
 Manage Groups Tranchischer Groups 	Selec	t User 🛟	Role(s) 🗘	Login Status 🗘	
 Troubleshooting Reporting 		TKLMAdmin	klmSecurityOfficer, suppressmonitor	Not Active	
 Reporting Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 		TKLMUser1	klmCreate, klmView, klmDelete, klmModify, klmAudit	Not Active	
Settings		tipadmin	iscadmins, tcrSuperAdmin, klmSecurityOfficer	Active	
	Tota	13			

Figure 9-11 Administrative user roles panel after save

9.1.5 RBAC impacts to the CLI and GUI

The CLI enforces the roles and permissions of the logged in user. The user will either get a subset of results that he or she has access to, or an error message indicating that the user does not have access to perform the task. Refer to the product documentation for specifics of which role has permission to perform which command.

The GUI enforces roles and permissions by restricting what is displayed and what buttons are enabled. The permissions are enforced in three ways:

- Some panels might be entirely hidden.
- Tables might only contain partial data (specifically, only the data the user has access to view).
- Some buttons might be disabled.

9.2 Device groups

A user-defined device group allows the user to create a grouping of devices and their associated keys to manage separately.

A user with the klmAdminDeviceType role can create and delete device groups from the **Manage Device Groups** page. To access this page, select **Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager** \rightarrow **Advanced Configuration** \rightarrow **Device Group** from the navigation pane.

User-defined device groups can be created based on one of the existing device families:

- LTO
- ► 3592
- DS5000

User-defined DS8000 device groups are not supported.

A device group having any object (key, certificate, or device) associated with it cannot be deleted. Each device group will have its own guided key and device creation page and its own key and device management page showing only objects associated with that device group.

Each device group in the LTO and 3592 device families will have its own Manage Default Rollover page for managing rollovers within their device group. Every key group, certificate and device is associated with a device group. The associated device group can be changed to another device group within the same device family.

Using the new device groups feature in TKLM V2.0

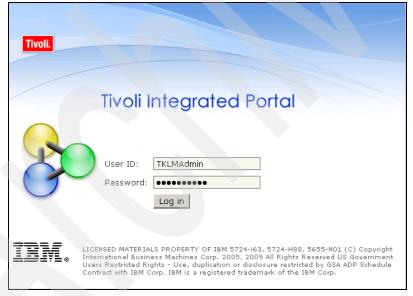
Each grouping can be managed independently by different administrators.

For example, a company has 2 divisions with many LTO devices. Instead of having a single administrator manage all the LTO devices and set a single policy, the devices can be segregated into multiple device groups so that multiple administrators can manage them. In this way each division can set their own encryption policy and keep their device management separate within a single TKLM.

When an administrator logs into the TKLM UI, he can select which device group he wants to administer. Only the devices within that group are displayed. This simplifies management.

9.2.1 Creating a new device group

After successfully creating the new device group, go to 9.2.5, "Creating a corresponding role for a new device group" on page 179 to create the corresponding role.



1. Log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12).

Figure 9-12 Tivoli Integrated Portal login using the TKLMAdmin user ID

 Expand Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager → Advanced Configuration in the navigation pane (Figure 9-13).

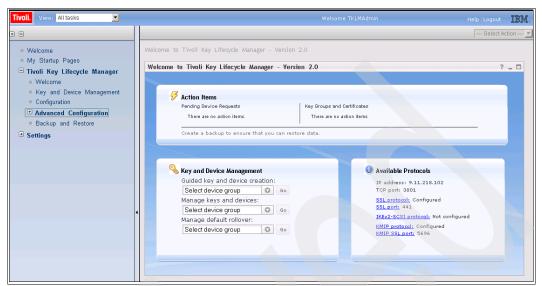


Figure 9-13 Welcome with Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager branch expanded

3. Select Device Group to see the Manage Device Groups panel (Figure 9-14).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
Ŧ Ð			Select Action 🔄
= Welcome	Manage Device Groups		
My Startup Pages	Manage Device Groups		? _ 🗆
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome	mange transfe		
 Key and Device Management Configuration 	You can create a new device group ba	ised on an existing device family.	
Advanced Configuration	You cannot delete a device group if the	ere are cryptographic objects or devices associated with it.	
 Keystore Device Group 			
 Server Certificates 	Create Delete	Filter	
Client Device Certificates	Device Group	O Device family:	
Backup and Restore	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR	LTO	<u>*</u>
Settings	ONESECURE	D\$5000	
			v
	1		
			Selected: 0, Total: 2
	Return home		

Figure 9-14 Manage device groups panel

4. Click **Create** to access the **Create Device Group** panel. Enter a new name in the **Device** group name field and click **Create** (Figure 9-15).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	
+ •	
 Welcome My Startup Pages 	Manage Device Groups
 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration 	*Device family:
 Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates 	*Device group name: Encrypt_3592 Create Cancel
 Backup and Restore Settings 	

Figure 9-15 Create device group panel

5. If successful, the Information message shown in Figure 9-16 is displayed. Click **OK**.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout
Ð			Select Action
= Welcome = My Startup Pages	Manage Device Groups		
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration	Manage Device Groups	b based on an existing device family.	? = 1
 Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group 	You cannot delete a device group	f there are cryptographic objects or devices associated with it.	0
 Server Certificates Client Device Certificates 	Create Delete	CTGKM10861	Filter
■ Backup and Restore ③ Settings	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR ENCRYPT_3592 ONESECURE	This device family is configured for the manual addition of devices. Add devices and certificates through the <u>step-by-step process</u> or <u>anarypt 3592 k</u> and device management.	
	×.		Selected: 0, Total: 3

Figure 9-16 Success message

6. After you successfully add the new device group, the **Manage Device Groups** panel will be similar to the one shown in (Figure 9-17).

Manage Device Groups Vou can create a new device group based on an existing device family. You cannot delete a device group if there are cryptographic objects or device group if there are cryptographic objects or device Group Server Certificates Backup and Restore Backup and Restore Device Group Settings ONESECURE Device Device Device Device Device Device Device Group Settings	Select Action ? _ 0
Manage Device Groups Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Create Delete Create Delete Device Group Device Group Device Group Create Delete Device Group Device Group Device Group Device Group Eackup and Restore Encerver Certificates Backup and Restore Encerver Certificates Encerver Certificates Backup and Restore Encerver Certificates Device Group Settings	
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Kay and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Backup and Restore Backup and Restore Backup and Restore	
Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Create Delete Device Group Backup and Restore Settings Settings	
Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings Certificates Backup and Restore Settings	ces associated with it.
Backup and Restore Device Group Device Composition • Settings ENCRYPT_2592 3592	Filter
Settings ENCRYPT_3592 3592	amily:
- Settings	<u> </u>
ONESECURE	
▲ Return home	Selected 0. Totali 3

Figure 9-17 Manage device groups after successful add

9.2.2 Adding a tape drive to a device group

Use the following steps to modify an existing device group by adding a tape drive.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. On the welcome panel, select the device group from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-18). This panel might have pending tape drive add requests.

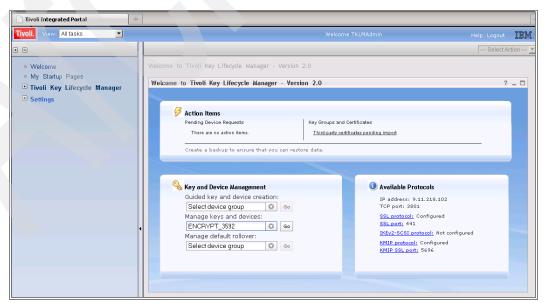


Figure 9-18 Welcome panel with manage keys and devices drop down selected

3. Click **Add** \rightarrow **Tape Drive** as shown in Figure 9-19.

Tivoli Integrated Portal	÷								
Tivoli. View: All tasks 💌					Wel	come TKLMAdmin		Help Logout	IBM.
• •								Select Ad	stion 💌
 Welcome 		Key and Device Mar	nagement						
My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager		Key and Device M	anagement					?	_ 0
Settings		The		ey will be used for a			crypt data read from a s ap the key to that devic Filter		der to
		Certificates	Use step-by	-step process for certif	icate and drive cre	eation ice Serial Numbe	Drive Default Certificate	Drive Partner Certific	cate
		Certificates 🧠	Partner	скрігаціон раце	Key	A1234567890A	System Default	Partner Default	*
	•	encrypt_cert	System Default and Partner	Jul 15, 2013 8:57:17 AM	¢r ¥				×
		Only accept manua	lly added dev	vices for communic		0			

Figure 9-19 Key and device management

4. In the appropriate fields on the **Add Tape Drive** panel, enter the device serial number, select the default key protection certificate, select the optional partner certificate, and optionally, enter a description.

Click Add Tape Drive.

Note: LTO drive serial numbers can be 10, 12, or 24 characters in length; 3592 drive serial numbers are 12 characters in length.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
+ -		Select Action
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Key and Device Management	? _ 🗆
	Add Tape Drive *Device serial number: B1234567801B Default key protection certificate for writing to tape cartridges System Default(encrypt_cert) Partner (Vendors, Internal Partners or Disaster Recovert) key protection certificate for writing to tape cartridges System Partner(encrypt_cert) Description: another tape drive Add Tape Drive Cancel	2

Figure 9-20 Add tape drive

5. When the process is complete, a panel similar to Figure 9-21 is displayed indicating that the addition of the tape drive was successful.

Tivoli. View: All tasks			We	lcome TKLMAdmin		Help Logout	IBM.		
• •						Select Actio	on 💌		
■ Welcome ■ My Startup Pages ● Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Key and Device Managemen					?.	- 0		
Settings	ensure a cer	1592 ow are available to encry tain key will be used for a Modify Delete 🎬					r to		
		Filter		Filter	▼ Filter				
	Certificates O System Default Partner	t/ Expiration Date	Private Key	Device Serial Number A1234567890A	Drive Default Certificate System Default	Drive Partner Certificat Partner Default	te 🔺		
	encrypt_cert Default Partner	Jul 15, 2013	•	B1234567901B	System Default	Partner Default			
	Only accept manually adde	d devices for communic		1			V		

Figure 9-21 Tape drive successfully added

Pending device request notification

If there are pending device requests, the **Welcome** panel displays a link to a page that displays devices that require individual approval before being added to TKLM, as shown in Figure 9-22.

Action Items Pending Device Requests You have pending device requests	Key Groups and Certificates There are no action items.
Create a backup to ensure that you can restore o	data,

Figure 9-22 Pending device request notification

Until the device is added, it cannot be served keys. If there are no devices pending approval, the message "There are no action items." is displayed. Otherwise, selecting the **You have pending device requests** link takes you to the **Pending Device Requests** page, where you can Accept or Reject the device for TKLM.

Managing pending device requests

The Pending Device Requests panel is shown in Figure 9-23. It displays pending device requests that require approval prior to being added to TKLM.

Accept Reject						Filter			
Date	0	Device			Device	Group	Machi	ine	
11/1/09 12:11 PM	1	8000_000	Accept Device R	equest			0	th	ļ
11/1/09 12:11 PM	1	8000_000	Click Accept to add	the device t	the system.				
11/1/09 12:11 PM	1	LTO_0000	Click Modify and A		fy the device prop	erties before	adding		
11/1/09 12:11 PM	1	3592_000	the device to the sy	Steffi.					
11/1/09 12:11 PM	1	3592_000	Device serial numb Device Group:	er: 12345678 LTO	9012				
11/1/09 12:11 PM	1	5000_000	Dence of oup.	210					
11/9/09 6:33 PM		new Devic	Accept Modify	and Accept	Cancel			eText2	
11/9/09 6:33 PM		new Devic						eText1	

Figure 9-23 Pending device requests

For each pending device request, select one of the following options by clicking the appropriate action button:

- Accept: Allows communication with the device. The device request will be removed from the pending list and the device will be added to TKLM.
- Modify and Accept: Allows you to modify device properties before adding it to the system.
- Cancel: Refuses communication with the device. The device request will be removed from the pending list and the device will *not* be added to TKLM.

9.2.3 Deleting a tape drive from a device group

Following these steps to delete a tape drive from a device group:

1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).

2. On the Welcome Panel, select the device group from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down box as shown in Figure 9-24. Click **Go**.

📄 Tivoli Integrated Portal 🛛 🔅			-
Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout	IBM.
+ -		Select Ac	tion 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Trivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Image: Action Items Panding Device Requests The are to action items. Thid party certificates pending limbol Create a backup to ensure that you can restore data. Image Key and Device Management Guided key and devices: Select device group Manage keys and devices: EINCRYPT_3582 Manage default rollover: Select device group Get	?	

Figure 9-24 Welcome panel with selected device group

3. Figure 9-25 shows the highlighted drive that will be deleted from this device group. Click **Delete**.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	-	-		٧	Velco	ome TKLMAdmin		Help Logout	IBM
• •								Select Actio	in 📘
Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore	Th	Management VCRYPT_3592 e keys below are					ypt data read from a st p the key to that device	orage device. In order	r to
 Keystore Device Group Server Certificates 	🏠 🎯	Add Modify	Delete 🛛 📑						
Client Device Certificates		•	Filter		\supset		Filter		\supset
 Backup and Restore Settings 	Certificates	O System Default/ Partner	Expiration Date	Private Key		Device Serial Number A1234567890A	Drive Default Certificate System Default	Drive Partner Certificat Partner Default	e
	encrypt_cert	System Default and Partner	Jul 15, 2013 B:57:17 AM	er I		B1234567890B	System Default	Partner Default	

Figure 9-25 Tape drive highlighted

4. A confirmation window prompts you to accept or reject the deletion (Figure 9-25). Click **OK** to delete the drive; click **Cancel** to keep drive in the device group.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
+ -		Select Action 🔄
Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration	Key and Device Management Key and Device Management ENCRYPT_3592 The keys below are available to encrypt data written to a device or to decrypt data read fiersure a certain key will be used for a storage device's write requests, map the key to the	
Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings	Add Modify Certificates System Default/ Partner encrypt_cert System Default and Partner	Filter ertificate Drive Partner Certificate : Partner Default : Partner Default
	OK Cancel	×

Figure 9-26 Tape drive deletion warning

5. Figure 9-27 shows the successful deletion of a tape drive from the device group.

ivoli. View: All tasks 🔽								IB
•							Select Ad	ction
 Welcome My Startup Pages 	Key and Devic	e Management ice Management					?	
Titoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group	CZ	ENCRYPT_3592 The keys below are ensure a certain ke	ey will be used for	a storage devi		rypt data read from a st ap the key to that device	orage device. In ord	
 Server Certificates 			Delete 🛛 📑					
Client Device Certificates			Filter)	 Filter 		
 Backup and Restore Settings 	Certificates	O System Default/ Partner	Expiration Date	Private Key	Device Serial Number A1234567890A	Drive Default Certificate System Default	Drive Partner Certific Partner Default	cate
	encrypt_cert	System Default and Partner	Jul 15, 2013 8:57:17 AM	•				
	•							
					-1			
	4			Þ	1			Þ

Figure 9-27 Tape drive successfully deleted

9.2.4 Deleting a device group

Follow these steps to delete a device group:

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- Select Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager → Advanced Configuration in the navigation pane (Figure 9-28).

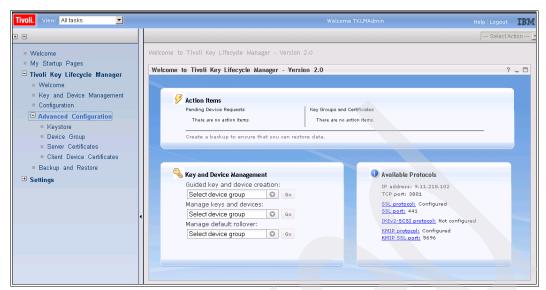


Figure 9-28 Welcome panel with advanced configuration selected

3. Highlight the device group and click Delete (Figure 9-29).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
+ -			Select Action
= Welcome = My Startup Pages	Manage Device Groups		
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Manage Device Groups		? _ 🗆
Welcome			
 Key and Device Management Configuration 	You can create a new device group bas	ed on an existing device family.	
Advanced Configuration	You cannot delete a device group if the	re are cryptographic objects or devices associated with it.	
= Keystore			
= Device Group			
 Server Certificates 	Create Delete	Filter	
Client Device Certificates	Bevice Group	O Device family:	
Backup and Restore	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR	LTO	<u>_</u>
Settings	ENCRYPT_3592	3592	
	ENCRYPT_LTO	LTO	
	ONESECURE	D\$5000	
			_
	4		₩ ►
			Selected: 1, Total: 4
	Return home		

Figure 9-29 Manage device groups with highlighted device group

4. A confirmation window prompts you to accept or reject the deletion (Figure 9-30). Click **OK** to delete the device group; click **Cancel** to keep the device group.

Tivoli Integrated Portal	÷			ſ
Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout	IBM
• •			Select Ad	tion 💌
Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration		Manage Device Groups Manage Device Groups You can create a new device group based on an existing device family.	?	
Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings		You cannot delete a device group if there are cryptographic objects or devices associated with it. Create Delete CrGKN 1081W Device Group BRC0_ENCRYPTOR ENCRYPT_SS2 ENCRYPT_SS2 ENCRYPT_LTO?		
		EKCEVET_LTO ONESECURE OK Cancel	Selected: 1, Tot	V al: 4

Figure 9-30 Delete device group confirmation warning

5. When the device group is successfully deleted, it is be removed from the device groups list as shown in Figure 9-31.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Wel	come TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IRM
+ -				Select Action
= Welcome = My Startup Pages	Manage Device Groups			
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration	Manage Device Groups You can create a new device grou	up based on an existing device fa	mily.	? _ 🗆
 Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group 	You cannot delete a device group	if there are cryptographic objects	s or devices associated with it	
 Server Certificates 	Create Delete			Filter
Client Device Certificates	Device Group	0	Device family:	
Backup and Restore	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR		LTO	A
Settings	ENCRYPT_3592		3592	
	ONESECURE		DS5000	
	T			
				Selected: O, Total: 3
	Carl Return home			

Figure 9-31 Successful device group deletion

9.2.5 Creating a corresponding role for a new device group

After creating a new device group, a corresponding role must be created to assign specific users permission to that device group. Users that have the klmSecurityOfficer role automatically have access to the new device groups.

Use the following steps to add other users:

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. The Welcome panel shows any action items that are required (Figure 9-32).



Figure 9-32 TIP welcome with action items

3. Select **Settings** \rightarrow **Role Management** in the navigation pane (Figure 9-33).

Welcome Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Velc	Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome tipadmin	Help Logout IBM.
 My Startup Pages Security Users and Groups Troubleshooting Reporting Troubleshooting Reporting Thvoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 ? _ 1 Methods and the second s	• •		Select Action 💌
Kole Management Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh	My Startup Pages Security Users and Groups Troubleshooting Reporting Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings Page Management View Management Role Management Role Management Role Management Console Preference Profiles	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Ø Action Items User tipadmin does not have a valid Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager role. Some roles require both device action permissions. Verify that the user's role has appropriate permissions.	? _ D

Figure 9-33 Welcome with settings selected

4. On the Role Management panel, click New (Figure 9-34).

oli. View: All tasks			
9	Role Manage ×		- Select Action
Welcome	Role Management		
My Startup Pages	Role Management		?
Security			
Users and Groups			Related Tasks
Troubleshooting	Use this page to papage all engages relay. You can use	detailed information about the roles and create new roles.	
Reporting	you can define the level of access to views, pages, and p	portlets. The access level that you set for the role applies t	to all users and
	groups that are members of that role. You can associate Administrative Group Roles tasks, found under Users and	users and groups to roles through the Administrative Use d Groups in the navigation.	r Roles or
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager			
Settings	Delete	Filter	
Page Management	Select Role Name	Туре	Users
 View Management 	Administrator	Core	0
Portlet Management	adminsecuritymanager	Core	0
Role Management			
5	all authenticated portal users	Core	0
Console Preference Profiles	all authenticated portal users BRCD_ENCRYPTOR	Core System	0
 Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh 			
Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh Credential Store	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR	System	0
 Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh 	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR Configurator	System Core	0
Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh Credential Store	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR Configurator deployer	System Core Core	0 0 0
Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh Credential Store	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR Configurator deployer DS5000	System Core Core System	0 0 0
Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh Credential Store	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR Configurator deployer DS5000 DS8000	System Core Core System System	0 0 0 0
Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh Credential Store	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR Configurator deployer DS5000 DS5000 GENERIC	System Core Core System System System	0 0 0 0 0
Console Preference Profiles Manage Global Refresh Credential Store	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR Configurator deployer DS5000 DS8000 GENERIC iscadmins	System Core Core System System System System	

Figure 9-34 Role management panel

5. Enter the **Role name**. This must match the device group name that was created previously. Click **Save** (Figure 9-35).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome tipadr
+ =	Role Manage ×	
= Welcome = My Startup Pages	Role Management Role Management	? _ 🗆
 Security Users and Groups Troubleshooting 	Role Management > New Role General Properties	Related Tasks -
	* Role name: Encrypt_3592	* Required field
■ Page Management ■ View Management	Type of role: Custom	
 Portlet Management Role Management Console Preference Profiles 	Access to Pages: 0	
 Manage Global Refresh Credential Store Change Your Password 	Save Cancel	

Figure 9-35 New role

6. The successfully created role is included in the Role Name list (Figure 9-36). You can now log out.

oli. View: All tasks			
9	Role Manage ×		Select Action
Welcome	Role Management		
My Startup Pages	Role Management		?
Security			
Users and Groups			Related Tasks▼
Troubleshooting	Use this page to manage all console roles. You can view (detailed information about the roles and greate new r	
Reporting	you can define the level of access to views, pages, and p	ortlets. The access level that you set for the role app	lies to all users and
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	groups that are members of that role. You can associate Administrative Group Roles tasks, found under Users and		User Roles or
Settings	New Delete	- Filter	
= Page Management	Select Role Name	▲ Туре ∧	Users /
 View Management Portlet Management 	Administrator	Core	0
 Pontet Management Role Management 	adminsecuritymanager	Core	0
Console Preference Profiles	all authenticated portal users	Core	0
= Manage Global Refresh	BRCD_ENCRYPTOR	System	0
Credential Store	Configurator	Core	0 -
= Change Your Password	deployer	Core	0
	DS5000	System	0
	DS8000	System	0
	Encrypt_3592	Custom	0
	GENERIC	System	0
	iscadmins	System	1
	klmAdminDeviceGroup	System	0

Figure 9-36 Role added successfully

9.2.6 Moving a tape drive to a different device group

Use the following steps to move a tape drive to a different device group:

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. Select the group in the **Manage Keys and Devices** drop-down box and click **Go** (Figure 9-37).

Tivoli. View: All tasks 💌			IBM
•		Select Acti	ion 🔤
 Welcome My Startup Pages Titvoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates 	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Image: Comparison of the state o	?.	
■ Client Device Certificates ■ Backup and Restore ③ Settings	Select device group Anage keys and devices: ENCRYPT_3592 Anage devices: SSL protectod SSL protect	9.11.218.102 01 1 Configured 1 1 <u>Strokooli</u> Not configured <u>di</u> Configured	

Figure 9-37 Welcome panel

3. Highlight any device; the **Modify** and **Delete** options become available (Figure 9-38). Click **Modify**.

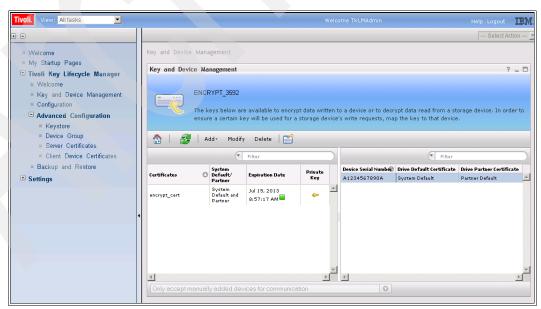


Figure 9-38 Key and device management, tape drive highlighted

 Select a different device group in the Currently assigned device group field for the selected tape drive. Click Modify to execute this change; click Cancel to deny it (Figure 9-39).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
+ -		Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome 	Key and Device Management Key and Device Management Middify Tape Drive	? _ 0
 Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	*Device serial number: A1234567890A Default key protection certificate for writing to tape cartridges System Default(encrypt_cert) Pather (Vendors, Internal Partners or Disaster Recovery) key protection certificate for writing to tape cartridges System Partner(encrypt_cert)	
	Currently assigned device group [ENCRYPT_3592 Description: Optional Description Image: Concel Modify Tape Drive Cancel	

Figure 9-39 Modify tape drive

9.2.7 Tips for working with device groups

Keep the following features of device groups in mind when you are working with them:

- ► Users with the klmAdminDeviceGroup role can create and delete device groups.
- Device groups having devices, keys, or certificates associated with them cannot be deleted.
- ► Each device group has a step-by-step panel and administration panel.
- Each device group in the LTO and 3592 device group families has a manage default rollover panel.
- Each key group, certificate, and device is associated with a device group.

The associated device group can be changed to another device group within the same device family.

9.3 LTO key groups

TKLM enables definition and serving of keys, and definition of keys or groups of keys that can be associated with a device. Some important facts about key groups to keep in mind are:

- Different devices require different key types.
- ► After devices are configured, TKLM deploys keys to the devices that request them.
- A TKLM key group can contain many keys, but a key can be a member of only one key group.
- On distributed systems, deleting a key group also deletes all the keys in the key group.
- ► TKLM uses only symmetric data keys for encryption tasks on the LTO tape drive.

- When an LTO tape drive requests a key, TKLM uses the alias specified for the tape drive. If no alias was specified for the tape drive, TKLM uses an alias from a key group, key alias list, or range of key aliases.
- The keys from the key group are used in a round robin fashion to help balance the use of keys more evenly.

9.3.1 Creating an LTO key group

This section covers the creation of key groups.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. On the Welcome panel select the device from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down box and click **Go** (Figure 9-40).

Tivoli. View: All tasks 💌	V	velcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
± =			Select Action
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	There are no action items. Thirds Create a backup to ensure that you can restore data. Key and Device Management Guided key and device creation: Select device group Go	pp and Certificates any certificates pending import	
	Manage keys and devices: LTO O O Go Manage default rollover: Select device group O Go	<u>SSL protocol</u> ; Configured <u>SSL port;</u> 441 <u>IK&92-SSL protocol</u> ; Not configured <u>KMIP protocol</u> ; Configured <u>KMIP SSL port;</u> 5696	

Figure 9-40 Welcome panel with key group selected

3. Click Add, then Key Group as shown in Figure 9-41.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome	TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
+ =				Select Action
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore 			device or to decrypt data read from rite requests, map the key to that de	
 Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	View Key Groups and Drives	Filter Number of Keys	Add Modify Delete	roups, keys and drive creation
	Only accept manually added devices for	communication	N N N	× I

Figure 9-41 Key and device management with key group selected

4. Make the appropriate entries in the **Key group name**, **Number of keys to create**, and **Key prefix** fields, then click **Create Key Group**. Figure 9-42 is an example of a completed panel.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
• •			Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Ttvoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	Key and Device Management Create Key Group *Key group name: 1011 *Number of keys to create: 20 *First three letters of key name (key prefix): TO Make this the default key group Create Key Group Cancel		SelectAction

Figure 9-42 Create key group

5. You are advised to create a backup (Figure 9-43). Click Go to continue.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
+ -		Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore 	Key and Device Management Key and Device Management LTO The keys below are available to encrypt data written to a device or to decrypt data read from a ensure a certain key will be used for a storage device's write requests, map the key to that device	
Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings	Were Key Groups and Drives Warning CTCKN1066W Critical data has been added. Create a backup to ensure that you can restore this data. 1211	Key Group or Key In Use
	Only accept manually added devices for communication	Y

Figure 9-43 Create key group warning message

6. If the new key group was created successfully, it will be included on the **Key and Device Management** panel (Figure 9-44).

Tivoli. View: All tasks			Welcom	ne TKLMAdmin		Help Logout	IBM
•						Select A	ction 📑
Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore		Management				a storage device. In or	? _ 🗆
 Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates 	View Key	Groups and Drives	🖸 🛛 🐼	Add * Mod	lify Delete 📑	er	
Backup and Restore	Key Group	O Default	Number of Keys	De	vice Serial Number Type	Key Group or Key In Us	e
Settings	1011		20	X			×
	Only accept man	ually added devices for cor	nmunication	C	2		

Figure 9-44 Successful key group creation

9.3.2 Modifying an LTO key group

Use the following steps to modify an LTO key group:

1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).

2. On the Welcome panel select the LTO key group from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-45).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
Ŧ =		Select Action
Welcome My Startup Pages Velcome Key and Device Management Configuration Keystore Keystore Device Group Certificates Client Device Certificates Client Device Certificates	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Image: Action Items Pending Device Requests There are no action items. Thisbearty certificates pending impact Greate a backup to ensure that you can restore date.	5
■ Backup and Restore • Settings	Select device Management Guided key and device creation: Select device group 60 Manage keys and devices: LTO 60 Manage default rollover: Select device group 60 Manage default rollover: 60 Select device group 60	gured

Figure 9-45 Welcome panel with manage keys and devices selected

3. Highlight the LTO key group and click Modify (Figure 9-46).

Tivoli. View: All tasks				Welcom	e TKLMAdmin		Help Logout IBM
+ •							Select Action
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager 	Key and Device Key and Devic	Management					? _ 🗆
Settings		ensure a certain key will ey Groups and Drives	be used for a storage			the key to Delete	<u> </u>
		Filter					Filter
	Key Group 1Q11	O Default	Number of Keys 20		evice Serial Number	O Type	Key Group or Key In Use
	I Only accept m	anually added devices f	or communication	<u> </u>	0		¥ F

Figure 9-46 LTO key group highlighted

4. Figure 9-47 shows updates done to this LTO key group. All items except the Key group name can be updated. Make modifications if desired and click **Modify Key Group**, or click **Cancel**.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
• •		Select Action 💌
Welcome My Startup Pages Trool Key Lifecycle Manager Settings Key and Device Mana Wodify Key Group 'Key group name: 1011 20 keys Next key to be used: No update to keys @ Create additional "Number of keys 6	to000000000000000000000000000000000000	

Figure 9-47 LTO key group modified

5. A pop-up window advises you to create a backup (Figure 9-48). Click OK to continue.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
• •		Select Action 💌
■ Welcome ■ My Startup Pages ■ Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager ■ Settings	Key and Device Management Image: Comparison of the second seco	
		3 Filter Filter Key Group or Key In Use
	Only accept manually added devices for communication	× >

Figure 9-48 LTO key group warning message

6. The **Key and Device Management** panel displays the updated key count (Figure 9-49).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
• •			Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 		a written to a device or to decrypt data read from a ge device's write requests, map the key to that dev	
	View Key Groups and Drives	🖸 🌌 Add* Modify Delete 📷	
	Filter	Tilte	r
	Key Group Default Number of Keys	p Device Serial Number Type Key Gr	roup or Key In Use
	Only accept manually added devices for communication	0	

Figure 9-49 LTO key group successfully updated

9.3.3 Deleting an LTO key group

Use the following steps to delete an LTO key group:

1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).

Note: An LTO key group scheduled for rollover cannot be deleted.

2. On the Welcome panel, select the LTO key group from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-50).

rivoli. View: All tasks		Help Logout IB)
8		Select Action
= Welcome	/elcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0	
= My Startup Pages		
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0	? _ 🗆
 Welcome 		
Key and Device Management	🕖 Action Items	
Configuration	Pending Device Requests Key Groups and Certificates	
Advanced Configuration	There are no action items. Third-party certificates pending import	
Keystore		
Device Group	Create a backup to ensure that you can restore data.	
 Server Certificates 		
 Client Device Certificates 		Contractor and the Contractor Statement
 Backup and Restore 	Skey and Device Management 🛛 🕕 Available Protocols	
Settings	Childred Low and device constitution	
	Select device group I Go TCP port: 3801	.2
	Manage keys and devices: SSL protocol: Configured	4
	LTO Go SSL port: 441	
	Manage default rollover: IKEv2-SCSI protocol: Not	-
	Select device group Go KMIP protocol: Configure KMIP SSL port: 5696	ed .
	KMIP SSL porti 3696	

Figure 9-50 Welcome panel with selected manage keys and devices item

3. Highlight the LTO key group that is to be deleted and click **Delete** (Figure 9-51).

Tivoli. View: All tasks				Welco	me TKLMAdmin		Help	Logout	IBM.
± •								- Select Ac	tion 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 		ement below are availabl			a device or to decry s write requests, map				_ D
	🟠 🛛 View Key Group	and Drives	0	3	Add = Modify		Filter		
	Key Group	Default	Number of Keys	A	Device Serial Number	O Type	Key Group or Key In	Use	*
	TEST		20						
	T Only accept manually a	dded devices for c	ommunication	×	4				Y

Figure 9-51 LTO key group highlighted for deletion

4. An LTO key group deletion warning is displayed (Figure 9-52).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout <u>IBM</u> .
• •		Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Key and Device Management Key and Device Management LTO The keys below are available to encrypt data written to a device or to decrypt data rea ensure a certain key will be used for a storage device's write requests, map the key to	
	View Key Groups and Drives Confirm Key Group Default 1Q11 TEST Default OK Cancel	Filter Key Group or Key In Use
	Conly accept manually added devices for communication) >

Figure 9-52 LTO key group deletion warning message

5. If the LTO key group deletion is successful, it is removed from the list as shown in Figure 9-53.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welco	me TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IEM.
• •				Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 		vailable to encrypt data written to will be used for a storage device'		? _ D
	View Key Groups and Drives		Add Modify Delete	Filter
	Key Group C Default	Number of Keys	Device Serial Number 🔿 Type	Key Group or Key In Use
	•			
	Only accept manually added device	es for communication	-	P

Figure 9-53 LTO key group successfully deleted

9.4 3592 Certificates

When a 3592 tape drive requests a key, TKLM generates a random symmetric data encryption key. Public/private key cryptography is used to wrap the data encryption key using a key encryption key, which is the public key of an asymmetric key pair.

The wrapped data key, along with key label information about what private key is required to unwrap the symmetric key, forms a digital envelope called an *externally encrypted data key structure* that is stored in the tape header area of any tape cartridge that holds data encrypted using this method. In this way, the key used to decrypt the data is stored with the data on the tape itself, protected by asymmetric, public/private key wrapping. The public key used to wrap that data key is obtained from one of two sources:

- ► A public key (part of an internally generated public/private key pair) stored in the keystore.
- A certificate (from a business partner, for example) stored in the keystore.

9.4.1 Creating a 3592 certificate

Follow the steps in this section to create a 3592 certificate.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. Select the correct device group in the **Managed key and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-54 on page 192).

📄 Tivoli Integrated Portal 🛛 🔶		
Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
• •		Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages 	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0	
My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Ø Action Items Pending Device Requests Hey Groups and Certificates There are no action items. Third party certificates pending import Create a backup to ensure that you can restore data. Create a backup to ensure that you can restore data.	
	Key and Device Management Guided key and device creation: Select device group Go Manage keys and devices: ENCRYPT_3592 Go Manage default rollover: Select device group Go	configured

Figure 9-54 Managed key and devices with drop down selection

3. Click Create certificate (Figure 9-55).

Tivoli. View: Alltasks 🔽			Welcome TKLMAdmin		Help Logout	(B)
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Configure Keys Configure Keys Step 1: Create Certificates Default certificate Partner certificate Step 2: Identify Drives New device requests Specify drives	ENCRYPT_3592 Step 1: Create Certificates To create a certificate, sele are done, continue to the "1 Create Modify Delete Certificates	ct the "Create" button. Yo	u may add several certific Filter Expiration Date	Private Key	/ou

Figure 9-55 Step 1: Create certificates

4. On the **Create certificate** panel select **Create self-signed certificate** and make the appropriate entries in the label, description, and validity period fields. Click **Create Certificate** (Figure 9-56).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin Help	Logout I
+ =		- Select Action
 Welcome My Startup Pages 	Configure Keys	
 ■ My Startup Pages ■ Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager ■ Settings 	Create Certificate Create self-signed certificate Use a self-signed certificate in a known environment. A client cannot verify a self-signed certificate before acceptin connection. Request certificate from a third-party provider Use a certificate generated by a third-party provider as a more secure means of communication. A client can verify certificate from a third-party provider before accepting a connection. Self-signed Certificate Certificate label in keystore: Encrypt_Cert Certificate description (common name): Encrypt_Cert Validity period of new certificate (in days; for example, 3 years is 365 x 3 = 1095 days): 1.095 Make this the default certificate Make this the partner certificate	
	Create Certificate Cancel	_

Figure 9-56 Create a self-signed certificate

5. A pop-up window advises you to create a backup (Figure 9-57).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	-	Welcome TKLMAdmin			Help Logout	IBM
• •					Select Ac	tion 📑
= Welcome = My Startup Pages ⊕ Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Configure Keys				?	_ 0
Trool Key Litecycle Manager Settings	Step 1: Create Certificates Default certificate Partner certificate	ENCRYPT_3592 Step 1: Create Certificates				
	Step 2: Identify Drives New device requests	To create a certificate, select the "Create" button. You are done, continue to the "Identify Drives" step.	ı may add seve		to the list. Once	s you
	Specify drives	Warning C CTGKM1066W	0	Filter e	Private Key	
		Critical data has been added. <u>Greate a ba</u> ensure that you can restore this data.	<u>ckup</u> to	8:57:17 AM	фю.	4
•		2	ОК		Selected: 0, To	V Nal: 1
		<u>Go to Next Step</u>				

Figure 9-57 Warning to create backup after successful key creation

6. If the self-signed security certificate was successfully created, it is included in the certificate list, as shown in Figure 9-58.

Tivoli. View: All tasks					Help Logout IBM		
• •					Select Action		
■ Welcome ■ My Startup Pages ● Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager	Configure Keys Configure Keys				? _ 🗆		
Involi Key Lifecycle Manager Settings	Step 1: Create Certificates Default certificate Partner certificate	ENCRYPT_3592 Step 1: Create Certificates					
	Step 2: Identify Drives	To create a certificate, select the "Create" button. You may add several certificates to the list. Once are done, continue to the "Identify Drives" step.					
	New device requests Specify drives	Create Modify Delete		Filter			
		Certificates	System Default/ Partner	Expiration Date	Private Key		
		encrypt_cert	System Default and Partner	Jul 15, 2013 8:57:17 AM	•		
					Selected: 0, Total: 1		
		<u>Go to Next Step</u>					

Figure 9-58 Successful self-signed security certificate completion

9.4.2 Modifying a 3592 certificate

To modify an existing 3592 certificate use the following steps:

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. On the Welcome panel, select the 3592 certificate from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-59).

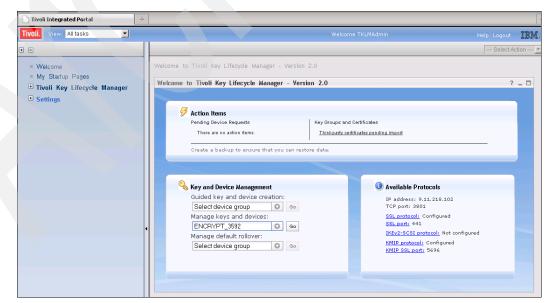


Figure 9-59 Welcome panel with manage keys and devices item selected

3. Highlight the 3592 certificate and click Modify (Figure 9-60).

Tivoli. View: All tasks							Welc	ome TKLMAdmin		Help Logout	IBM.
• =	Π									Select A	ction 💌
Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group		,	ENCF	RYPT_3592 eys below are a certain ke	ey will be used for	a storage (to a device or to decryp 's write requests, map t		orage device. In or	? _ D
 Server Certificates 			A	dd • Modify	········		_				
 Client Device Certificates 					Filter				Filter		
 Backup and Restore Settings 		Certificates	0	System Default/ Partner	Expiration Date	Private Key	•		rive Default Certificate ystem Default	Drive Partner Certif	icate
		encrypt_cert		System Default and Partner	Jul 15, 2013 8:57:17 AM	÷	1	2			
		I Only accept mar	nuall	ly added dev	vices for communic	cation	T	x o			×

Figure 9-60 Key and device management with certificate highlighted

4. The 3592 certificate can only be updated by checking or unchecking the two radio buttons that concern default and partner certificates, as shown in Figure 9-61.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
•		Select Action
Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates	Key and Device Management Modify Certificate *Certificate label in keystore: encrypt_cert *Certificate description (common name): Encrypt Cert *Validity period of certificate (in days): 1095	0
 Backup and Restore Settings 	Currently assigned device group ENCRYPT_3592 Wake this the default certificate Wake this the partner certificate	
	Optional Certificate Parameters	
	Modify Certificate Cancel	

Figure 9-61 Modify certificate

9.4.3 Deleting a 3592 certificate

This section describes how to delete a 3592 certificate.

Note: If the selected 3592 certificate is in use or is the system default, it cannot be deleted.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. On the Welcome panel, select the 3592 device group from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-62).

🗋 Tivoli Integrated Portal	÷			
Tivoli. View: All tasks			Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
+ =				Select Action
= Welcome = My Startup Pages		Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version	2.0	
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager		Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Vers	ion 2.0	? _ 🗆
Settings				
		Grant Action Items		
		Pending Device Requests	Key Groups and Certificates	
		There are no action items.	Third-party certificates pending import	
		Create a backup to ensure that you can rest	core data.	
		💫 Key and Device Management	Available Protocols	
		Guided key and device creation:	IP address: 9.11.218.102	
		Select device group 🖸 💿	TCP port: 3801	
		Manage keys and devices:	SSL protocol: Configured SSL port: 441	
	1	ENCRYPT_3592 Q Go Manage default rollover:	IKEv2-SCSI protocol: Not configure	ed
		Select device group	KMIP protocol: Configured	
		Object device group	KMIP SSL port: 5696	

Figure 9-62 Welcome panel with 3592 device group selected

3. Highlight the 3592 certificate to be deleted and click Delete (Figure 9-63).

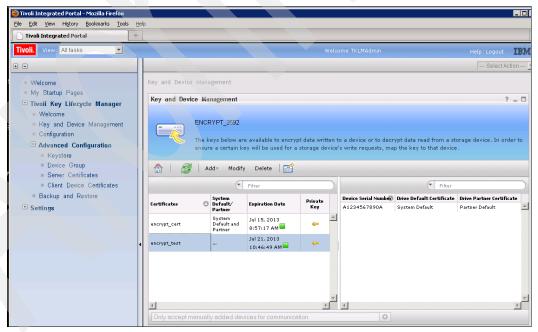


Figure 9-63 Selected 3592 certificate to be deleted

4. The deletion of a 3592 certificate will generate a warning message, as shown in Figure 9-64.

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IEM.
+ -		Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Welcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration 	Key and Device Management Key and Device Management ENCRYPT_3592 The keys below are available to encrypt data written to a device or to decrypt data read from ensure a certain key will be used for a storage device's write requests, map the key to that	
 Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	Certificates System Default/ Partner Certificate vill be deleted only if it is not currently ured by any device. Any tapes written previously using this certificate vill be non-readable if the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using this certificate vill be non-readable if the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously using the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used by the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used by the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used by the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used by the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used by the currently used by any device. Any tapes written previously used by the currently used by any tapes written previously used by any device. Any tapes written previous any tapes writen previously used by the currently used by any t	Filter Uffcate Drive Partner Certificate Partner Default
		2

Figure 9-64 3592 certificate deletion warning message

 If the 3592 certificate is successfully deleted, it is removed from the list, as shown in Figure 9-65.

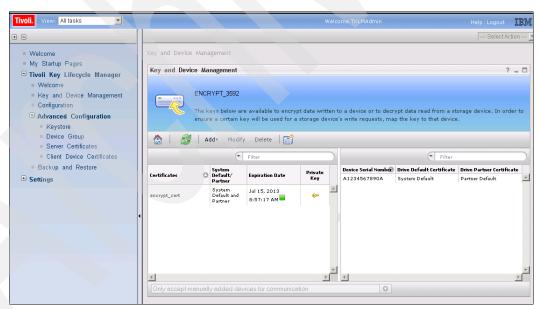


Figure 9-65 3592 certificate successfully deleted

9.5 Scheduling rollovers

TKLM can alleviate some of the drudgery associated with key management. This does not mean that you can set up TKLM once and then forget about it. When drives enter and leave the environment, TKLM has to be updated. Although you can schedule key rollover and

pregenerate the keys, do not do this too far in advance. Otherwise you risk compromised future keys in addition to current keys.

This section provides information about:

- Scheduling LTO key group rollover
- Scheduling 3592 certificate rollover

9.5.1 Scheduling LTO key group rollover

One of the advantages of TKLM is that you can schedule it to change key groups at a predetermined time without human intervention. Keys and key groups do not expire like certificates. However, even though you do not have to worry about keys expiring, you should still adhere to the key usage time guidelines set by your organization.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- 2. On the Welcome panel, select the LTO key group from the **Manage keys and devices** drop-down list and click **Go** (Figure 9-66).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	We	elcome TKLMAdmin Help Logout IBM
÷ =		Select Action
= Welcome W = My Startup Pages		? _
	Key and Device Management Guided key and device creation: Select device group TO Manage keys and devices: TO Manage default rollover: Select device group o	Available Protocols IP address: 9.11.218.102 TCP port: 3801 SiL notice (Configured SiL notice); Vot configured KMIP protocol; Configured KMIP sal. port; 5696

Figure 9-66 Welcome panel with LTO selected in manage keys and devices field

3. Click Add to schedule an LTO group rollover (Figure 9-67).

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
• •			Select Action
Welcome My Startup Pages Velcome Key and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration	Manage Key Group Default Rollover Manage Key Group Default Rollover LTO Each device group has a default for write request	ts. You can specify new defaults and their effective	? _ 🗆
KeystoreDevice Group	Current System Default:		
 Server Certificates 	🏠 🛃 🔫 Add Delete		
 Cilent Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	LTO System Default	Effective Date	×
	x		V
			Selected: 0, Total: 0

Figure 9-67 Manage key group default rollover

4. Enter the Key group name and Effective date, then click Add Future Write Default or Cancel (Figure 9-68).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM
• •		Select Action
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome 	Manage Key Group Default Rollover Manage Key Group Default Rollover	? _ 🗆
 Key and Device Management Configuration 	Add Future Write Default - LTD	0
Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates	*Key group name: 1011 *Effective date (MM/dd/yyy): 07/21/2011	
 Backup and Restore Settings 		
	Add Future Write Default Cancel	
		Selected: 0, Total: 0

Figure 9-68 Add future write default

5. The successful scheduling of the rollover is indicated as shown in Figure 9-69.



Figure 9-69 Successful rollover

9.5.2 Scheduling 3592 certificate rollover

Another advantage of TKLM is that you can schedule it to change certificates at a predetermined time without human intervention. However, be careful when doing this because the certificates are generated at creation time, not certificate rollover time. This means, when you create a certificate that will take effect at a later date you must not expire the certificate until after the next scheduled certificate change. For example, if you have a default certificate that expires in one week but your policy is to change certificates on a three-month cycle, when you create the certificates, you must set them to expire in no sooner than three months and one week.

- 1. If you have not already done so, log in using the TKLMAdmin user ID (Figure 9-12 on page 169).
- On the Welcome panel, select the 3592 device group from the Manage keys and devices drop-down list and click Go (Figure 9-70).

Tivoli. View: All tasks 💌		Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
+ =			Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Welcome to Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager - Version 2.0 Image: Station lems Pending Device Requests There are no action items. There are no action items. Create a backup to ensure that you can restore data.		-
	Step and Device Management Guided key and device creation: Select device group Manage keys and devices: Select device group Manage default rollover: ENCRYPT_3592 Go	Available Protocols IP address; 9:11.218.102 TCP port: 3801 SSL protecol; Configured SSL port: 441 IffY2-2551 protecol; Not configu KMIP protocol; Configured KMIP SSL port; 5596	red

Figure 9-70 Welcome panel with selected manage default rollover

3. Click Add (Figure 9-71).

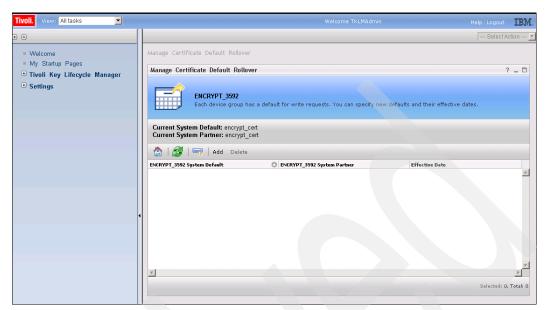


Figure 9-71 Manage certificate default rollover panel

4. Select the 3592 certificate to roll over, select either self-signed or partner certificates, and specify an effective date. Click **Add Future Write Default** or **Cancel** (Figure 9-72).

Tivoli. View: All tasks	Welcome TKLMAdmin	Help Logout IBM.
• •		Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Welcome Welcome Vey and Device Management Configuration Advanced Configuration Keystore Device Group Server Certificates Client Device Certificates Backup and Restore Settings 	Manage Certificate Default Rollover Add Future Write Default - ENCRYPT_3592 *Certificate label in keystore and expiration date: encrypt_cent - Juli 15, 2013 ✓ Make this the default certificate on the effective date. ✓ Make this the partner certificate on the effective date. ✓ *Effective date (MM/dd/yyyy): 07/21/2012	? _ 0
	Add Future Write Default Cancel	

Figure 9-72 Add future write default

5. Figure 9-73 shows the successful addition of the 3592 certificate rollover.

Tivoli. View: All tasks		Welcome TKLMAdm	in Help Logout IBM .
• •			Select Action 💌
 Welcome My Startup Pages Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Settings 	Manage Certificate Default Rollover Manage Certificate Default Rollover Encrypt_3592 Each device group has a default for write requests. You can specify new defaults and their effective dates. Current System Default: encrypt_cent Current System Partner: encrypt_cent Image Image Image <t< th=""></t<>		
	ENCRYPT_3592 System Default	ENCRYPT_3592 System Partner encrypt_cert	Effective Date Jul 21, 2012 12:00:00 AM
	encrypt_cert	encrypt_cert	Jul 21, 2012 12:00:00 AM
	•		Selectadi O, Totali 2

Figure 9-73 Successful certificate rollover scheduled

Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this book.

IBM Redbooks

For information about ordering these publications, see "How to get Redbooks" on page 206. Note that some of the documents referenced here may be available in softcopy only.

- ► IBM System Storage Tape Encryption Solutions, SG24-7320
- ► IBM System Storage Data Encryption, SG24-7797
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS, REDP-4472
- Using IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manger: Business Benefits and Architecture Overview, REP-4529
- IBM TS3500 Tape Library with System z Attachment: A Practical Guide to TS1120 Tape Drives and TS3500 Tape Automation, SG24-6789
- ► IBM System Storage Tape Library Guide for Open Systems, SG24-5946
- Communications Server for z/OS V1R7 TCP/IP, Implementation Volume 3 -High Availability, Scalability, and Performance, SG24-7171
- Java Stand-alone Applications on z/OS Volume II, SG24-7291
- Communications Server for z/OS V1R2 TCP/IP Implementation Guide, SG24-5227
- IBM System Storage Virtualization Engine TS7700: Tape Virtualization for System z Servers, SG24-7312
- UNIX System Services z/OS Version 1 Release 7 Implementation, SG24-7035

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2010. All rights reserved.

Other publications

These publications are also relevant as further information sources:

- IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V2.0 Installation and Configuration Guide, SC27-2741
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V2.0 Quick Start Guide, GI11-8738
- Program Directory for IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager for z/OS V1.0.0, GI11-4300
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1.0.3, SC23-9977
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Quick Start Guide V1.0, GI11-8744
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager for Solaris 10 Sparc (64 bit), LCD7-3819
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1.0 for AIX 5.3 (64 bit) DVD, LCD7-3819
- IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1.0 for Linux (32 bit), LCD7-3820
- IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1.0 for Red Hat Advanced Server 4.0 x86 S, LCD7-3820
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager for Solaris 10 Sparc (64 bit), LCD7-3822
- IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1.0 for Solaris 10 Sparc (64 bit), LCD7-3822
- IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager for Windows Server 2003 (32 bit), LCD7-3823
- IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1.0 for Windows Server 2003 (32 bit) DVD, LCD7-3823
- ► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Documentation, SCD7-3833
- ► IBM Encryption Key Manager component for the Java platform, EKM Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide, GA76-0418
- IBM Ported Tools for z/OS User's Guide, SA22-7985
- IBM System Storage TS1120 and TS1130 Tape Drives and TS1120 Controller Introduction and Planning Guide 3592 Models J1A, E05, E06, EU6, J70 and C06, GA32-0555.
- IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library Operator Guide, GA32-0560
- IBM System Storage 3953 Library Manager Model L05 Operator Guide, GA32-0448
- z/OS V1R3.0-V1R4.0 DFSMS Using Magnetic Tapes, SC26-7412-01
- DFSMSdfp Utilities, SC26-7414-02

- z/OS DFSMS Software Support for IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Drive (3592), SC26-7514
- z/OS V1R3.0-V1R8.0 DFSMS Software Support for IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3592, SC26-7514
- ► z/OS V1R7.0 MVS Initialization and Tuning Guide, SA22-7591
- ► IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for AIX Administrator's Guide, GC32-0768
- ► z/OS V1R7.0 MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference, SA22-7592
- ► z/OS V1R7.0 MVS System Commands, SA22-7627
- ► z/OS V1R7.0 DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference, SC26-7402
- ► *z/OS UNIX System Services Planning*, GA22-7800
- ► IBM Tape Device Driver Installation and User's Guide, GC27-2130

Online resources

These websites are also relevant as further information sources:

► IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V2

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v2r1/index.jsp?top ic=/com.ibm.tklm.doc_2.0/welcome.htm

IBM Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v2r1/index.jsp?top ic=/com.ibm.tklm.doc/welcome.htm

- Privacy Rights Clearing House http://www.Privacyrights.org
- Electronic Privacy Information Center
 - http://www.epic.org/privacy/bill_track.html
- IBM Encryption Key Manager Home Page http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S4000504
- IBM Home Page

http://www.ibm.com

- BMJCEFIPS provider and its selection and use http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/java/jdk/security/50/FIPShowto.html
- z/OS Security Server RACF Command Language Reference http://publibz.boulder.ibm.com/epubs/pdf/ichza460.pdf

Related publications 205

Tivoli Storage Manager documentation

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp

► TS1120 Interoperability matrix

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/pdf/compatibility/ts1120_int
erop.pdf

TS1120 ISV matrix

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/pdf/compatibility/ts1120_isv
_matrix.pdf

TS1120 supported host bus adapters

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/hba/index.wss

Linear Tape-Open organization home page

http://www.lto.org

► IBM LTO Home Page

http://www.ibm.com/storage/lto

TS3500 Interoperability matrix

http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/tape/pdf/compatibility/ts3500_int
erop.pdf

- IBM System Storage Interoperation Center http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/
- ► TS3500 firmware upgrades

http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/lto/3584/downloading.html

- IBM Virtualization Engine TS7700 Series Encryption Overview http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atsmastr.nsf/WebIndex/WP101000
- IBM Software Developer Kit http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/software/java

How to get Redbooks

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks, Redpapers, Technotes, draft publications and Additional materials, as well as order hardcopy Redbooks publications, at this website:

ibm.com/redbooks

Help from IBM

IBM Support and downloads

ibm.com/support

IBM Global Services

ibm.com/services

Related publications 207

Index

Numerics

1024-bit key length 10 128-bit secret key 9 13-6500 serial number 40 256-bit AES data key 36 3590-A60 enterprise tape controller 81 3592 certificate 191-192, 194-197 3592 drive family 67 3592 J1A drives 84 3592 J70 controller 81 3592 media 40 3592 Model C20 Silo Compatible Frame 84 3592 Model J70 41, 82 3592 tape drives 40 3952 Model F05 82 3952 Model J70 82 3953 Model F05 82 592-E05 75, 78

Α

abstract server 32 Advanced Encryption Standard See AES AES 7-9, 11, 14, 27-28, 35, 67 key 12 standard supports 128-bit block sizes 10 AIX 8, 29, 85 AIX 5.3 24 AIX V5.1 72-73 ALMS 88 AME 50, 53, 58 application layer 7, 29, 34 Application-Managed Encryption (AME) 50, 53 Asianux 2.0 75 associated encryption key 8 asymmetric 9, 11-14, 23-24 encryption 9, 11-12, 14 encryption algorithms 9 key 11-12, 27 Atape Device Driver 70, 72 Autoloader 49 Automatic Identification Manufacturers 45

В

backup tapes 6 Barcode Encryption Policy *See* BEP barcode reader 52 barcode symbology 45 Basel II 6 basic encryption 8 BEP 31 BOT 35

С

capacity expansion 80 cartridge memory 32, 45 centralized key management 34 certificate 12, 19, 24 chain 18 information 16 management 15 repository 16-18 request 15-19 response 17-18 certificate authority (CA) 12, 16 channel connections 24 channel ports 40 ciphertext 8-9 CLEAR 32-33 asymmetric keys 27 CommVault Galaxy 87 control path 51 Controller Area Network (CAN) 57 controller prerequisites 67 CU Encryption Configuration 81

D

data cartridges 50 data compression 7 Data Encryption Standard (DES) 8 Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem See DFSMS data key (DK) 3-4, 14, 32, 34 data path 34, 51 data path failover 57 data protection requirements 6 data security 6 Data Security Standard (DSS) 6 decrypt 13-14, 34 decrypt a message 14 decryption data path 13 decryption process 33 degaussed 7 device driver 50, 52, 56, 71 device group 161-162, 168-172, 175-179, 181-183, 192, 196, 200 DFSMS 8,72 Diffie-Hellman 12 digital certificate 15 digital signature 15 DK 32 drive firmware 50, 57

Ε

EEDK 32-33

EKM 3-4, 25, 27, 30-33, 37, 40, 70, 72-73, 75, 77-78 attach 82 capability 7 component 8,77 EKM validates 32 ElGamal 12 elliptic curve cryptography 12 encrypted data 4, 7, 11 data on tape 23 message 12 tape 33, 36 encrypting tape drives 24 encryption algorithm 13 capability 2, 8, 40, 81 characteristics 67 configuration 81 encryption and decryption 9 encryption key 8, 40, 87 manager 54 encryption keys 24 encryption method 58 model E tape drives 58 support Tape Encryption 58 encryption methods 9, 14, 23, 37, 70 encryption policies 7, 23, 29-30, 50 implementation 70 encryption process 7, 32 encryption solution 37 encryption transforms 8 encryption-capable LTO-4 tape drives 86 TS1120 drives 81 encryption-enabled 34, 82 ESCON 81,86 expansion module 53 extended certificate chain 18 Externally Encrypted Data Key 32

F

FC9900 84 FCRA/FACTA 6 Fibre Channel 37, 50–52 interface 40, 50, 52 support 40, 82 Fibre Channel drives 50

G

Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (GLBA) 6

Η

Hewlett-Packard servers 86 high capacity tape media 45 host bus adapters 41 host server 50, 52 HP 42 HP-UX 8, 76, 85 11.0 77

L

i5/OS 8 ILEP 31 INCITS 35

J

J70 Tape Controller 41 Java Cryptography Extension 27 Java security components 27 Java security keystore 27 JCE 27 JCEKS keystore 27

Κ

KEK 32 label 32 stored in EEDK 32 key distribution 10 key encrypting key *See* KEK key exchange 27 Key Group 161 Key ID 28 key management approach 4 key manager required or not 23 software 4 keystore 4, 27–28, 32–33, 37, 66–67, 70

L

Label - Encrypt All 71 LAN/WAN 37 library layer 29 Library-Managed Encryption (LME) 53, 58 lifecycle functions 25 lin_tape device driver 75 Linear Tape-Open See LTO Linear Tape-Open (LTO) 57, 66 Linux servers 46,86 Linux on System z 8 LME 58 load balancing 40 logical library 51 check box 59 Low Voltage Differential 50, 52 LTO 2 compliant drives 42 encryption 49 format cartridges 42 organization 42 specified products 42 tape library 42 technology 42-43

Ultrium 1 44 Ultrium 3 44 Ultrium 4 31 Ultrium Generation 4 tape drive 2, 28, 35 Ultrium manufacturers 42 Ultrium tape drive 43 LTO group 198 LTO key group 184, 186-187 LTO Key Groups 161, 183 LTO Ultrium 5 50 LTO-1 44 LTO-2 2, 43-44, 89 LTO-3 2, 43-45, 88 non-WORM 45 WORM 45 WORM media 45 LTO-4 encryption 4 tape drive 4, 79, 82 LTO4 50, 52-53 LTO4 tape drive 53

Μ

manage keys and devices 172, 176, 182, 184, 187, 189, 194, 196, 198, 200 media type 45 message integrity 15 Microsoft Windows 2000 Server 86 Microsoft Windows 2008 operating system environments 85 migration wizards 25 Model C06 82 Model C06 tape controller 80 Model C10 82 Model E tape drive 58 encryption method 59 Model EU6 41 Model J70 81 controller 41 models E tape drive 58 multiple platforms 7

Ν

non-encryption-capable drives 84 non-erasable 45 non-repudiation 15 non-WORM cartridges 45

0

OPEN processing 40 Open Systems 4, 8, 37, 39–40, 83 attached 80–81 attached TS1120 drives 80 device drivers 87 environment 7, 40, 71 IBM tape libraries 66 operating systems 72 platforms 67 server 37 operating system 30, 65–67, 70, 72, 85 choosing encryption method 70 encryption management 4 Open Systems 87 operator guide 56 out-of-band 82

Ρ

Payment Card Industry (PCI) 6 personal certificate 16-18 policy 34 control and keys 31 granularity 8 implementation 8 power supply 53 private key 9, 11-16, 18, 32, 90 protected information 6 PSP 85 public key 11-13, 15-18, 28, 32-33, 90 encrypted copy 16-17 encrypted version 16 encryption 11-12 new encrypted copy 17 Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) 15, 18 public-key encryption 12 public-private key pair 11, 13-14 encryption 11

Q

quick reference encryption planning 67

R

RACF 7 RBAC 161-162, 168 real time 6 record retention. 45 recover data 6 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 75 Redbooks Web site 206 Contact us xi redundant power supply 57 regulatory burden 6 rekeying 28 remote management unit 52 riskier environment 6 **Rivest-Shamir-Adleman** See RSA Role Based Access Control 161–162 rollover 161, 183, 189, 197-198, 200-202 rotation of certificates 25 rotation of groups of keys 25 RS/6000 40 RSA 10, 12-14, 27, 32

S

S1120 76, 79, 81 S2340 78 S3310 77 S3500 79 secret key 10 algorithms 10 encryption 9 secure infrastructure 4 security breaches 6 security layers 6 Sequential mode 50-51 serial number 15, 40, 80 server identities 19 SME 51, 53, 58 Solaris See also Sun Solaris SSL 19, 27 cipher 19 setup 19 SSR 51,81 stored data encryption 6 Sun Solaris 8, 58, 77 servers 86 Sun Solaris 8 77 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 75 Symantec NetBackup 87 Symantec Netbackup 31 Symbol Specification (USS-39) 45 symmetric 8-12, 14, 23-24 AES encryption 9 data key 14 encryption 8-10 key 9 key encryption 9, 12 System p 46, 51, 74 System Storage Interoperation Center 85 System z 85 ESCON 81 hosts 42 server 40 System-Managed Encryption (SME) 50, 52

T

T10 35 T10 application 50 tape assets 72 cartridge scratch pool 81 compression 4 controller requirements 83 tape drive encryption 7 encryption function 50 encryption keys 4 outboard encryption 7 tape encryption process flow 5 tape encryption function 83

tape encryption management 4 tape infrastructure 4 tape interchange 30 Tape Library 51 Tape Library Models L23 83 Tape Library Operator's Guide 31 Tape Library web interface 80 TCP/IP 27-28 TDES (triple DES) 10 TIP installation manager 25 TIPAdmin 162-163 Tivoli Integrated Portal 25 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager See TKLM TKLM 4, 14, 23-28, 40, 65, 70 CLI 27 command line interface 26 components 26 file 25 TKLMAdmin 162, 169, 172, 175, 177, 180, 182, 184, 186, 189, 192, 194, 196, 198, 200 TLS 9 TO5 78-79 TotalStorage 3952 Model C20 79 Transparent LTO Encryption 84 triple DES (TDES) 8 trusted certificate 19 TS1040 58 TS1040 Tape Drive 58 TS1120 Tape Drive controller 84 controller (3592-C06) 81 encryption 83 Model C06 81-82 Model C06 controller 82 Model E05 tape drive 2 TS1130 56, 58 TS1130 Tape Drive ALMS 83 TS2240 models 46 TS2900 tape autoloader 76, 86 TS2900 web interface 70 TS3100 tape library 77, 79 TS3100 web interface 70 TS3200 web Interface 70 TS3310 web Interface 70 TS3400 56,74 TS3400 Tape Library 35, 76 TS3400 web Interface 70 TS3500 web interface 70 TS7700 Virtualization Engine 80 Twofish 10

U

Ultrium 77 Ultrium 4 53 data cartridge 53 Ultrium 5 Tape Drive 51 Ultrium Generation 4 media 77–78 unencrypted workloads 7 usability enhancements of EKM 25

V

valid drives 33 validity date 15 validity period 18 virtualization engine 80 VOLSER 36

W

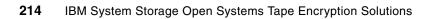
Windows 25, 29 Windows 2000 Server 8, 77–78 Windows Server 2008 86 WORM 7, 44 cartridge 44–45 Write Once Read Many *See* WORM

Χ

X.509 15 xSeries 40

Ζ

z/OS system 8, 37 z/TPF 8 z/VM 8, 81 z/VSE 8, 72



(0.2"spine) 0.17"<->0.473" 90<->249 pages





IBM System Storage Open Systems Tape Encryption Solutions



Understanding tape encryption and Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager Version 2

Planning for and installing hardware and software

Configuring and managing the tape encryption solution This IBM Redbooks publication discusses IBM System Storage Open Systems Tape Encryption solutions. It specifically describes Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) Version 2, which is a Java software program that manages keys enterprise-wide and provides encryption-enabled tape drives with keys for encryption and decryption.

The book explains various methods of managing IBM tape encryption. These methods differ in where the encryption policies reside, where key management is performed, whether a key manager is required, and if required, how the tape drives communicate with it.

The security and accessibility characteristics of encrypted data create considerations for clients which do not exist with storage devices that do not encrypt data. Encryption key material must be kept secure from disclosure or use by any agent that does not have authority to it; at the same time it must be accessible to any agent that has both the authority and need to use it at the time of need.

This book is written for readers who need to understand and use the various methods of managing IBM tape encryption. INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL SUPPORT ORGANIZATION

BUILDING TECHNICAL INFORMATION BASED ON PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE

IBM Redbooks are developed by the IBM International Technical Support Organization. Experts from IBM, Customers and Partners from around the world create timely technical information based on realistic scenarios. Specific recommendations are provided to help you implement IT solutions more effectively in your environment.

For more information: ibm.com/redbooks

SG24-7907-00

ISBN 0738434809